

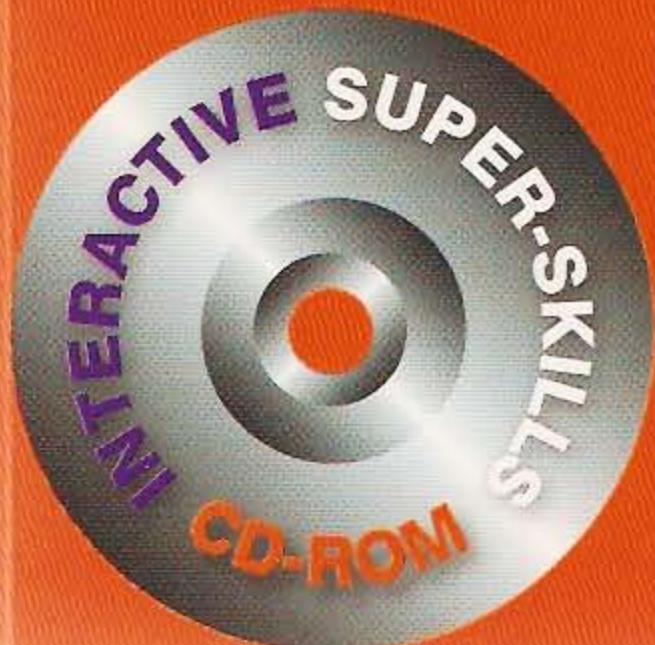
Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford Word Skills



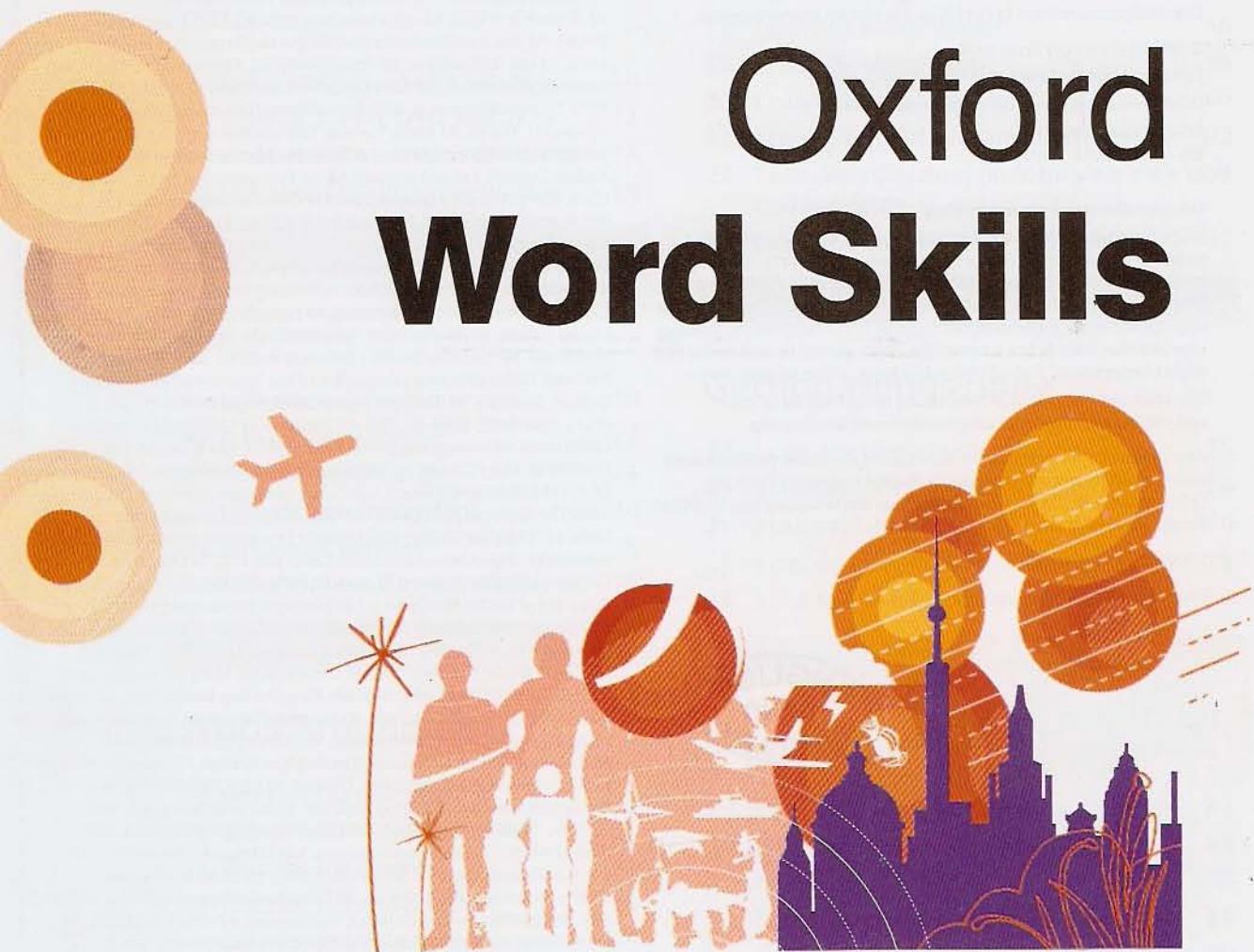
Learn and practise English vocabulary



Intermediate

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

Oxford Word Skills



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

50430

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide in
Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of
Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2008

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2008

2012 2011 2010 2009 2008

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any
means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University
Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the
appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning
reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT
Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain
and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for
information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility
for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 462004 8

Printed in Hong Kong

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Illustrations by Anne Cakebread pp 12, 13, 20, 21, 58, 79; Mark Duffin
pp 36, 56, 62, 86, 115, 116, 164, 197, 198; Stephane Gamain p 8; Nick
Hawken pp 38, 53, 55, 93, 100, 174; Gavin Reece pp 30, 40, 48, 67, 78,
92; Willie Ryan pp 29, 41, 47, 51, 60, 64, 66, 76, 77, 87, 89, 97, 103,
104, 119, 120, 135; Tony Sigley pp 32, 61, 99, 118, 179.

Commissioned photography by MM Studios pp 7, 8 (hand and pencil), 53
(kidney), 53 (carp).

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for permission
to reproduce photographs: Alamy pp 44 (earthquake/Yoshiaki Nagashima/
Pacific Press Service), 46 (gorilla/David Fleetham), 52 (plum/Tim Hill),
52 (grapefruit/Keith Leighton), 52 (avocado/Iconotec), 52 (passion fruit/
foodfolio), 52 (papaya/Iconotec), 52 (pomegranate/Keith Leighton),
52 (spinach/ignazuri), 52 (chick peas/Sara Danielsson/Bon Appetit),
52 (fennel/Tim Hill), 52 (artichoke/Sue Wilson), 52 (asparagus/Emilio
Ereza), 52 (beetroot/Emilio Ereza), 52 (parsley/artpartner-images.
com), 52 (mint/foodfolio), 52 (basil/foodfolio), 52 (thyme/foodfolio), 52
(rosemary/foodfolio), 53 (trout/Brigitte Krauth/Bon Appetit), 53 (Tim
Hill), 53 (squid/Iconotec), 53 (lobster/Dieter Heinemann/Photostock),
53 (crab/D. Hurst), 53 (clam/Theresa Raffetto/Bon Appetit), 74 (hospital
ward/WR Publishing), 84 (house/Malcolm Fairman), 98 (police arrest/
Arthur Turner), 114 (oil paints/Andrew Paterson), 114 (watercolours/
Chris Rose), 116 (Dex Image), 124 (Rio Carnival/Demetrio Carrasco/
Jon Arnold Images Ltd), 153 (Sam/John Eccles), 159 (Janine Wiedel
Photolibrary), 171 (niceartphoto), 174 (Tony Craddock/Images Etc
Ltd); Corbis pp 24 (Franck Seguin/TempSport), 42 (the earth/NASA),
42 (rainforest/Louise Murray/Robert Harding World Imagery), 44
(hurricane/Henry Romero/Reuters), 44 (volcano/Jim Sugar), 46 (eagle/
Daniel J. Cox), 47 (shark/Stuart Westmorland), 74 (operating theatre/
Mediscan), 90 (Georges Seurat, *Bathers at Asnières*, 1883-84, The
National Gallery/By kind permission of the Trustees of the National
Gallery, London), 90 (Georges Seurat, *Sunday Afternoon on the Island
of La Grande Jatte*, 1884-86, The Art Institute of Chicago/The Gallery
Collection), 98 (courtroom/Heide Benser/zefa), 114 (portrait/Self-
Portrait by Mary Cassatt ca. 1880/Smithsonian Institution, Washington
DC), 114 (landscape/Vincent van Gogh, *Landscape with Green Corn*,
1889/The Gallery Collection), 114 (still life/Paul Cezanne, *Fruit on a
Cloth*, ca. 1890/The Gallery Collection), 114 (abstract painting/Wassily
Kandinsky, *Improvisation with Green Center* (No. 176), 1913/Burstein
Collection/Barney Burstein © ADAGP, Paris and DACS, London 2008);
Courtesy of Gecko Headgear p 146 (www.geckoheadgear.com); Getty
Images pp 22 (Dan/Justin Pumfrey/Iconica), 22 (Giles/Victoria Snowber/
Photographer's Choice), 28 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt/Pix
Inc./Time & Life Pictures), 28 (Bill Clinton/Scott Morgan), 44 (drought/
Angelo Cavalli/Stone), 46 (lion/Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (tiger/
Dave King/Dorling Kindersley), 46 (monkey/Tatsuhiko Sawada/amana
images), 46 (fly/James Cotter/Stone), 46 (whale/Jeff Hunter/Riser),
46 (mosquito/Frank Greenaway/Dorling Kindersley), 52 (raspberry/
Kevin Summers/Photographer's Choice), 52 (fig/Christian Teubner/
StockFood Creative), 52 (broccoli/Kevin Summers/Photographer's
Choice), 74 (x-ray/Vincenzo Lombardo/Photographer's Choice), 83
(Jonnie Miles), 101 (3D4Medical.com), 104 (Alexander Nemenov/AFP),
124 (La Tomatina festival /Jose Jordan/AFP), 158 (London Express/
Hulton Archive), 165 (E. Dygas), 193 (Lyn Holly/Photographer's Choice
RR); MorgueFile.com pp 84 (brick wall/bosela), 84 (stone wall/bosela);
Photolibrary.com pp 44 (tidal wave/Vince Cavataio/Pacific Stock), 53
(veal/Philip Wilkins/Fresh Food Images), 53 (cod/Maximilian Stock
Ltd/Fresh Food Images), 53 (oyster/Maximilian Stock Ltd/Fresh Food
Images), 153 (Jake/Ulrika Malm/Nordic Photos), 154 (Photodisc);
Punchstock pp 22 (Kaz/Stockbyte), 46 (bee/Don Farrall/Photodisc), 46
(shark/DLILLC), 52 (apricot/C Squared Studios/Photodisc), 52 (celery/
Stockbyte), 53 (calf's liver /Foodcollection.com), 53 (duck meat/
Foodcollection.com), 53 (rabbit meat/Foodcollection.com), 53 (sea bass/
Foodcollection.com), 53 (mussel/Melba Photo Agency), 98 (fingerprints/
Steve Allen/Jupiterimages/Brand X), 152 (Marcy Maloy/Photodisc), 153
(Boss/Purestock), 155 (Stockbyte); Rex Features pp 37, 124 (cherry
blossom festival/Sinopix Photo Agency Ltd); Royalty-free pp 46
(leopard/Photodisc), 46 (spider/Photodisc), 46 (elephant/Ingram), 46
(camel/Photodisc), 46 (bear/Photodisc), 46 (snake/Photodisc), 47 (snake/
Ingram), 52 (coconut/Ingram), 52 (leek/Photodisc), 52 (sweetcorn/
Stockbyte), 173 (Photodisc); Science Photo Library p 74 (scan/just SPL)
Images sourced by Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk
Cover illustration by Carol Verbyst

Contents

Introduction	5
Starter unit	7
Abbreviations and symbols	9
Learning	
1 I can talk about vocabulary learning	10
2 I can describe my progress and aims	12
3 I can understand a learner's dictionary	14
4 I can talk about English punctuation	16
Review	18
People	
5 I can talk about appearance	20
6 I can talk about character	22
7 I can describe my feelings	24
8 I can talk about relationships	26
9 I can talk about families	28
10 I can talk about weddings and funerals	30
Review	33
The world around us	
11 I can describe the universe	36
12 I can talk about rivers and the sea	38
13 I can describe the climate	41
14 I can describe natural disasters	44
15 I can describe animals and insects	46
Review	49
Daily life	
16 I can describe a range of food	52
17 I can talk about diets and cooking	54
18 I can talk about money	56
19 I can talk about sleep	58
20 I can talk about injuries	60
21 I can talk about cars and driving	62
22 I can describe travel problems and accidents	64
23 I can talk about clothes and fashion	67
Review	70
Getting things done	
24 I can describe a visit to the dentist	73
25 I can describe hospital procedures	74
26 I can explain household tasks	76
27 I can describe housework	78
28 I can talk to a hairdresser	79
Review	80
Describing things	
29 I can describe urban life	82
30 I can describe parts of a building	84
31 I can describe objects	86
32 I can describe the senses	88
33 I can describe a painting	90
34 I can describe actions	92
Review	94

Social and political issues

35	I can talk about crime	96
36	I can describe the justice system	98
37	I can discuss health issues	100
38	I can talk about politics	102
39	I can talk about war and peace	104
40	I can talk about events in history	106
	Review	107

Media and entertainment

41	I can understand newspapers	110
42	I can talk about films	112
43	I can talk about art and photography	114
44	I can talk about music	116
45	I can talk about people and places in sport	118
46	I can describe sporting events	120
47	I can talk about books	122
48	I can describe festivals	124
	Review	126

Work and study

49	I can get through exams	129
50	I can describe university life	130
51	I can apply for a job	132
52	I can describe jobs	134
53	I can describe a career	136
54	I can describe working conditions	138
	Review	139

Business

55	I can talk about finance	142
56	I can talk about companies	144
57	I can describe a successful business	146
58	I can discuss marketing	148
	Review	150

Social English

59	I can express probability	152
60	I can explain similarities and differences	153
61	I can make arrangements to meet	154
62	I can discuss my likes and dislikes	155
63	I can give my opinion	156
64	I can talk about rules	158
65	I can discuss hopes and plans	160
66	I can express dissatisfaction	162
67	I can understand warnings	164

	Review	165
--	--------	-----

Language

68	I can use link words	168
69	I can use a range of adjectives	171
70	I can express time and place	174
71	I can use prepositions in phrases	176
72	I can use prefixes	178
73	I can use suffixes	180
74	I can use verb patterns	182
75	I can use phrasal verbs	184
76	I can use a range of adverbs	186

	Review	188
--	--------	-----

Styles of English

77	I can recognize informal English	191
78	I can write a formal letter	194
79	I can understand abbreviations and short forms	196
80	I can understand American English	198

	Review	200
--	--------	-----

Vocabulary building tables	202
Answer key	203
Answer key to review units	223
List of spotlight boxes	232
Word list / Index	233
Acknowledgements	254

Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise, and revise new vocabulary.

Basic:	elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)
Intermediate:	intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)
Advanced:	advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears.

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. money, health issues, relationships
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. giving opinions, making arrangements to meet
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prefixes and suffixes, link words.

There is an emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, but also vocabulary from different types of written text, e.g. job advertisements, magazine articles, web pages, and warning signs. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items, more idiomatic language, and a wide range of collocations.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000™, which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. *don't bother*, *I haven't a clue*, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. *a filling* at the dentist's.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases as used in the particular contexts by supplying a clear illustration, a glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should also be aware that nouns may be countable in some senses and uncountable in others. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings and structures and on countability. (See 'How to learn new words' in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5–10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals, glossaries, or tables and test themselves. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.

Starter

A How to use a unit

Study the new words.
They are in **bold type**.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the **word list** (page 233) to find out how to say the words.

B Choosing a book

Bookellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?

The title and front cover just attracted my attention.

I was browsing in a bookshop. I just picked up a paperback that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very **readable** and **well written**.

It was a **gift**, but I like the author so I was really pleased.

I looked through the first chapter – it looked **fascinating**.

Glossary

title	• the name of a book, play, film, etc.
cover	• the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
attract sb's attention	• if sth attracts your attention , it interests you so that you want to look at it.
browse	• spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.
paperback	• a book with a thick paper cover (a hardback has a hard cover).
readable	• easy or interesting to read.
gift	• a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday, present .
author	• the writer of a particular book, play, etc.
look through sth	• read sth quickly, skim sth .
chapter	• one of the parts into which a book is divided.
fascinating	• very interesting.

spotlight Compound adjectives with **well**

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

- Who is the **author** **gift** ?
- 1. The cover attracted my **chapter** **attention** .
- 2. The author was **well known** **well written** .
- 3. I read the second **title** **chapter** .
- 4. The book looked very **readable** **well informed** .
- 5. I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the **hardback** **paperback** .
- 6. I was in a bookshop the other day, just attracting **browsing** .

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not **well known**, but he's a good (1) a... His book might attract a lot of (2) a... because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t...! It's being published in hardback and (4) p... I read the first (5) c... about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f... – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c... there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w...

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. What kind of books do you find most **fascinating**?
2. What kind of reference books do you use most often?
3. Do you enjoy **browsing** in bookshops?
4. Are you ever attracted to a book just by the **cover**?
5. Do you have more **paperbacks** or **hardbacks**? Why?

7

Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT 123



Use the vocabulary to write or speak about yourself in 'ABOUT YOU' or 'ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY'.

Use the **cover card** to test yourself.

A **glossary** explains the new words.

A 'spotlight' tells you about important words.

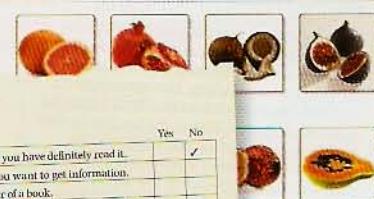
Do the exercises. Check your answers in the **answer key** (page 203).

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

- | | Yes | No |
|--|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ► If a novel is readable , it means that you have definitely read it. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1. Reference books are useful when you want to get information. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. There is often a picture on the cover of a book. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 8. An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

Oxford Word Skills

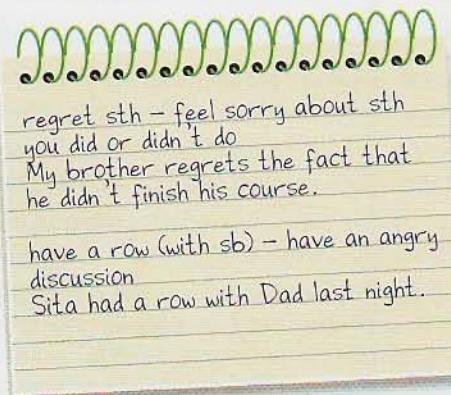


There's more practice in the **review** units and on the **CD-ROM**.

B How to learn new words



- Repeat the words and phrases two or three times to help you remember them.



- Write down new words in a notebook, with the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.
- Write down any other important information about a word or phrase, e.g. words that often go together (*a serious relationship*) or constructions with verbs (*regret the fact that*). Write your own example sentences.

Perfect Weekend Channel Five

Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who got to know one another at university, and now, five years later, get together for a weekend. But things soon go wrong. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now realizes they have nothing in common, while Pete regrets the fact that he split up with Amy, the girl he used to go out with. Now Amy is in a serious relationship with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big row. Amy falls out with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

Glossary

get to know sb meet
become friends.
one another each other
get together (of two or more people) for a social reason.
go wrong used when something goes wrong in a situation or relationship.
realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.
have nothing in common
no interests that are the same or common.
regret sth / doing sth
feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.

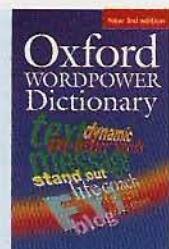
7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to **know** **one (1) another** when we were on holiday. We had a lot in **common** and got on really well, but our **relationship** was serious. Then it all went **wrong**. We **had a big argument** and he **split** up with her. We **stayed** out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon **regretted** his relationship with Inez. He **realized** that he was still in love with her, and that was a big mistake.

→ **know** **one (1) another**
I had a lot in **common** and got on really well. Our **relationship** was serious. Then it all went **wrong**.

- Use a pencil for the exercises. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.
- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you've studied all the units in that module (e.g. 'The world around us').
- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (page 202).
- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for more useful materials and more practice.

Buy a good dictionary for your level. The *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary* (Oxford University Press) is very good for intermediate learners.



- Use a highlighter pen to help you remember difficult words.

C Abbreviations and symbols

N	noun	usu	usually
V	verb	c	countable noun (A countable noun can be used with <i>a/an</i> and can have a plural form.)
ADJ	adjective		
ADV	adverb	u	uncountable noun (An uncountable noun cannot usually be used with <i>a/an</i> and usually has no plural form.)
OPP	opposite (for example, <i>modest</i> is the opposite of <i>arrogant</i>)		
SYN	synonym (a word that means the same as another word; for example, <i>drawback</i> is a synonym of <i>disadvantage</i>)	PT	past tense (the past simple form of an irregular verb)
INF	informal (If a word or phrase is informal , you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well.)	PP	past participle
FML	formal (If a word or phrase is formal , you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know well, or in written English.)	sth	something (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. <i>regret sth</i>)
PL	plural	sb	somebody (used in glossaries and tables, e.g. <i>dismiss sb</i>)
SING	singular	etc.	used at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all
		c.g.	for example (as in: <i>jewellery</i> , e.g. <i>earrings</i> , <i>necklace</i>)

Vowels

i:	see	/sɪ:/
i	happy	/'hæpi/
ɪ	sit	/sɪt/
e	ten	/ten/
æ	hat	/hæt/
ɑ:	father	/'fɑ:ðə(r)/
ɒ	got	/gɒt/
ɔ:	saw	/sɔ:/
ʊ	put	/put/
u	casual	/'kæʒuəl/
u:	too	/tu:/
ʌ	cup	/kʌp/
ɜ:	bird	/bɜ:d/
ə	about	/ə'baʊt/
eɪ	say	/seɪ/
əʊ	go	/gəʊ/
aɪ	five	/faɪv/
aʊ	now	/naʊ/
ɔɪ	boy	/bɔɪ/
ɪə	near	/nɪə(r)/
eə	hair	/heə(r)/
ʊə	sure	/ʃʊə(r)/

Consonants

p	pen	/pen/
b	bad	/bæd/
t	tea	/ti:/
d	did	/dɪd/
k	cat	/kæt/
g	got	/gɒt/
tʃ	cheap	/tʃɪ:p/
dʒ	jam	/dʒæm/
f	fall	/fɔ:l/
v	verb	/vɜ:b/
θ	thin	/θɪn/
ð	this	/ðɪs/
s	so	/səʊ/
z	zero	/zɪərəʊ/
ʃ	shoe	/ʃu:/
ʒ	television	/telɪvɪʒn, teli'vɪʒn/
h	hat	/hæt/
m	map	/mæp/
n	no	/nəʊ/
ŋ	sing	/sɪŋ/
l	leg	/leg/
r	red	/red/
j	yes	/jes/
w	wet	/wet/

1 I can talk about vocabulary learning

A Reading

Tips for reading

When you're reading in a **foreign** language, you should try to get the **gist** of the **text**. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to **guess** the meaning from the **context**, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record** of the words in a notebook, and, if possible, **make a note of** any special information. For example, is the word **formal** or **informal**? Is it used in a particular kind of **construction**, e.g. a verb that is often followed by a preposition?
- Write a **translation** if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

spotlight **formal**

We use **formal** language to appear serious or official, or sometimes when we don't know people well. OPP **informal**. **formality** N. OPP **informality**.

Glossary

foreign	from a country that is not your own (a person is a foreigner).
gist	SING The gist of sth is the general meaning but not all the details.
text	the written part of a book, newspaper, etc.
recognize sb/sth	know who sb is or what sth is because you've seen or heard them before. recognition N.
go through sth	read sth carefully from beginning to end.
identify sth	recognize sth and decide what it is.
guess sth	give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts. guess N.
context	the words before and after the new word or phrase that help you to understand the meaning.
keep a record of sth	write sth down to help you remember it. record sth V.
make a note of sth	write sth down quickly to help you remember it.
construction	the way words are used together in a sentence. construct sth V.
translation	a text that has been changed from one language into another. translate sth V.

1 Replace the words in italics with a single word that has the same meaning.

- I looked at the pictures but didn't understand the *written part*. text
- 1 I understood the *general meaning* of the text. _____
- 2 We couldn't *recognize and decide* what language they were speaking. _____
- 3 The *way you use words together to make a sentence* in German is different. _____
- 4 He is *from another country*. _____
- 5 You can *guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word*. _____
- 6 There was a text which I had to *change from one language into another*. _____

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is 'How do you do' formal ? ~ Yes, we usually just say hello .
- 1 Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had to _____. .
- 2 Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the _____ of it.
- 3 Did you _____ everyone? ~ There were one or two people I didn't know.
- 4 Were there many _____ ? ~ No, all the people were from this country.
- 5 Did you understand the text? ~ Yes, but can we _____ through it again?
- 6 Do you make a _____ of new words? ~ Yes, I keep a _____ in my notebook.

B Speaking and listening



- In a **conversation**, you can often ask someone to **repeat** words or phrases you don't understand, and **explain** the meaning to you.
- Repeat new words to yourself, so you know how to **pronounce** them.
- Look for **opportunities** to practise them when you're speaking. Don't be afraid to **experiment** with new language, and don't worry about **making mistakes**.
- It's important to **revise** new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't a correct **method** of learning vocabulary. Do what **works** for you.

spotlight

conversation, chat, discussion, argument

A **conversation** is a talk between two or more people. You can also **have a chat with sb**, which is a friendly informal conversation (**chat** v). A **discussion about sth** is when you talk about something seriously (**discuss sth** v). An **argument** is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily.

Glossary

repeat sth	▪ say sth again. repetition N.
explain sth	▪ make sth clear or easy to understand. explanation N.
pronounce sth	▪ make the sound of a word or letter. pronunciation N.
opportunity	▪ a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do. SYN chance .
experiment with sth	▪ try sth to see what result it has.
make mistakes	▪ NOT do mistakes .
revise sth	▪ study sth again (you do revision).
method	▪ a way of doing sth.
work	▪ get or have the result you want.

3 What nouns are formed from these verbs?

- discuss discussion 2 pronounce _____ 4 revise _____
1 repeat _____ 3 explain _____ 5 chat _____

4 Circle the correct answer.

- If you explain something, you make it easy to say/understand
1 If you revise something, you say it again/study it again.
2 If something works, it is successful/difficult.
3 If you experiment with something, you try something/find something.
4 You can do/make a mistake.
5 A method is an opportunity to do something/a way of doing something.
6 A chat is a formal/an informal conversation.

5 Complete the sentences.

- We had a conversation on the phone last night.
1 We had a serious _____ in class today about politics.
2 My brother's got an _____ to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
3 I saw Joelle in town and we had a quick _____. She told me about the wedding.
4 I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really _____. You must try it.
5 Do you think we'll have a _____ to go shopping when we're in Milan?

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

2 I can describe my progress and aims



A Making progress

When I started learning English, I was very **enthusiastic** and **motivated**, but I found the pronunciation difficult and people couldn't always understand me. **After a while** my pronunciation **improved** and I was able to **express** basic ideas quite **effectively**. It was **obvious** that I was **getting better**.

and that was very **encouraging**. But at intermediate level, I **made** slower **progress**. There were so many new words and phrases, but also words that I could understand but couldn't use **accurately**. I think I **was** more **aware** of my mistakes, which **was** good – but also **frustrating**.

Glossary

enthusiastic	• very interested in sth or excited by it. enthusiasm N.
motivated	• If you are motivated , you really want to do sth. motivation N.
after a while	• after a period of time.
improve	• become better. SYNS get better , make progress . improvement N.
express sth	• say or show what you think or feel.
effectively	• in a way that gives you the result you want. effective ADJ.

obvious	• easily seen and understood. SYN clear .
encouraging	• If sth is encouraging , it gives you hope and makes you want to continue. encourage v. encouragement N.
accurately	• with no mistakes. accurate ADJ.
be aware of sth	• If you are aware of sth , you know about it.
frustrating	• making you annoyed because you cannot do sth you want to do. frustration N.

1 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

- She did the work very effectively.
1 He gave me a lot of enthusiasm.
2 I think my English is improving.
3 My mother speaks English very accurately.
4 It's frustrating when you can't understand.
5 He doesn't have much motivation.
6 I was very obvious when I started.

EFFECTIVE
ENCOURAGE
IMPROVEMENT
ACCURATE
FRUSTRATION
MOTIVATED
ENTHUSIASM

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- She shows lots of interest and excitement. enthusiasm
1 Do you think your English is improving?
2 I didn't worry about my mistakes after a period of time.
3 Where are you making the most improvement?
4 It's clear that he doesn't know the difference between *lend* and *borrow*.
5 She can speak French without mistakes.
6 I think she knows about the problem.
7 I can say most of the things I need to.
8 I make a lot of mistakes, which is annoying.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

B Future goals



Felipe's goals

- I understand **everyday** English, but my vocabulary needs to **expand** so that I can understand a **wide range** of subjects, and express more **complex** ideas.
- I'd like to be more **fluent** when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things in more **detail**. And I need to get better at using **appropriate** language when I speak.
- I can understand general things, but I want to read texts that are **relevant** to my work, and some of these contain quite **specialized** language.

Glossary

goal a thing you want to be able to do in the future.

SYN **aim**.

everyday normal or usual.

expand become bigger or make sth bigger.

a wide range a large number of different things.

complex not simple; often difficult to understand.
SYN **complicated**.

fluent able to speak a foreign language easily and well. **fluently** ADV.

in detail fully and including a lot of information.

appropriate right or suitable in a particular situation. OPP **inappropriate**.

relevant to sth useful for and connected to sth.
OPP **irrelevant**.

specialized having or needing a lot of special knowledge.

spotlight **contain** and **include**

We can often use **contain** or **include** with the same meaning.

The film contains/includes scenes of violence.

Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.

*The box **contains** magazines. (There are magazines inside the box.)*

*The price **includes** service. (Service is one part of the price.)*

4 Replace the underlined words with a synonym.

► The story is complex. complicated

1 I speak Russian very well.

4 The business got bigger.

2 It's part of normal life.

5 It's not suitable here.

3 It isn't connected to my work.

6 My goal is to get to university.

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

► Was the information important for your report? ~ No, it was irrelevant.

1 Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in detail.

2 It wasn't a suitable word to use. ~ I agree, it was incorrect.

3 Is it a simple problem? ~ No, it's quite complex.

4 Is this yoghurt bad for you? ~ No it doesn't contain any fat.

5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely expanding.

6 Do you need any special knowledge? ~ Yes, it's very specialized.

7 Is the hotel room expensive? ~ Yes, but the price includes dinner.

8 Were there many subjects? ~ Yes, quite a wide range of topics.

6 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or tell another student.

3 I can understand a learner's dictionary

How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*.

Different meanings of the word are given in the **definitions**, which are in simple English.

The dictionary helps you **avoid making** mistakes, and helps with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the **entry**.

Examples of usage are **provided**.

Words that are often used together (**collocations**) are given in bold.

It helps you with **style: for instance**, whether words are formal, informal, **slang, offensive**, etc.

guy /gai/ **noun** 1 [C] (informal) a man or boy: *He's a nice guy.* 2 [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of men and women: *What do you guys want to eat?*

win /wɪn/ **verb** (winning; *pt, pp* won /wən/) 1 [I, T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc.: *to win a game/match/championship* • *I never win at table tennis.* • *Which party do you think will win the next election?* 2 [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc.: *We won a trip to Australia.* • *Who won the gold medal?* • *He won the jackpot in the lottery.*

HELP Note that we **earn** (not **win**) money at our job: *I earn £15 000 a year.*

IDM **win/lose the toss** → **toss**
you can't **win** (informal) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: *Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.*

PHR V **win sb over/round (to sth)** to persuade sb to support or agree with you: *They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.*

mistake /mɪ'stɪk/ **noun** [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: *Try not to make any mistakes in your essays.* • *a spelling mistake* • *It was a big mistake to trust her.* • *I made the mistake of giving him my address.*

IDM **by mistake** as a result of being careless: *The terrorists shot the wrong man by mistake.*

OTHER WORDS FOR mistake

mistake

Error is more formal than **mistake**: *a computing error.* When you make a mistake you **do sth wrong**: *I got the answer wrong.* • *You must have the wrong number (= on the phone).* **Fault** indicates who is responsible for sth bad: *The accident wasn't my fault.* The other driver pulled out in front of me. **Fault** is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: *a technical fault.*

Phonetic **symbols** help with pronunciation. You can find out which **syllable** is **stressed**.

It can teach you **related** words: this helps you **build** your vocabulary and **select** the correct word for your needs.

Glossary

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means. **define sth** **v.**

avoid doing sth If you **avoid doing sth**, you try not to do or experience it.

idiom a group of words whose meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words (also **expression**).

entry one of a list of items included in a dictionary, list, etc. (There are three dictionary **entries** on this page.)

provide sth give sth to sb or make sth available for sb.

style the way sth is written or spoken (e.g. an informal **style**, a formal **style**).

for instance **SYN** **for example**.

slang very informal words or phrases used in spoken language.

offensive rude and likely to upset sb. **offend sb** **v.**

symbol a letter, number, or sign that has a particular meaning (e.g. the **symbol** /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh').

syllable a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. (Go has one syllable and prefer has two syllables.)

relate sth to sth connect sth to sth. **related** **adj.**

build sth make sth bigger; increase sth.

select sth **SYN** **choose sth** (but **select** is more formal). **selection** **n.**

spotlight stress and emphasize

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word, or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are **stress (on sth)** and **emphasis (on sth)**.

The stress is on the first syllable. Don't emphasize every word.

They are also used to say that sth is important.

The newspapers stressed the need for urgent action.

The emphasis is mainly on education.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| ► The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings are very impressive. | The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings are very impressive. | S |
| 1 That's a useful idiom to know. | That's a useful expression to know. | |
| 2 Is that collocation correct? | Is that definition correct? | |
| 3 What she said was very rude. | What she said was offensive. | |
| 4 Does he use a lot of slang? | Does he use a lot of idioms? | |
| 5 Can you avoid mistakes? | Can you define mistakes? | |
| 6 Make sure you select the right number. | Make sure you choose the right number. | |
| 7 The stress is on the first three letters. | The emphasis is on the first three letters. | |
| 8 It doesn't give all the answers. | It doesn't provide all the answers. | |

2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

symbols offending related entry ✓ selection syllable
instance stress idiom provide build collocations entry

- | |
|--|
| ► In a dictionary, <i>foreigner</i> comes after the <u>entry</u> for <i>foreign</i> . |
| 1 Dictionaries have many uses: for <u> </u> , to find out meaning, or check pronunciation. |
| 2 Does your local bookshop have a good <u> </u> of dictionaries for sale? |
| 3 Some dictionaries can help you <u> </u> your vocabulary if they <u> </u> synonyms and opposites, or other <u> </u> words. |
| 4 A dictionary can tell you which words are rude so that you can avoid <u> </u> people. |
| 5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic <u> </u> and noting which <u> </u> is stressed. |
| 6 <i>Good luck!</i> is given as an <u> </u> in the dictionary, at the end of the <u> </u> for <i>luck</i> . |
| 7 Dictionaries often tell you which words go together. Examples of <u> </u> are <i>make a mistake</i> and <i>take a photo</i> . |
| 8 In the word <i>emphasis</i> , the <u> </u> is on the first syllable. |

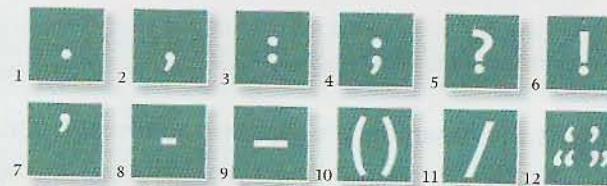
3 Now look at the dictionary entries on the left-hand page. Answer the questions.

- | |
|--|
| ► Which syllable is stressed in <i>mistake</i> ? <u>The second syllable</u> |
| 1 Which related words are given for <i>mistake</i> and <i>make a mistake</i> ? <u> </u> |
| 2 How many definitions are there in the entry for <i>guy</i> ? <u> </u> |
| 3 What style is the idiom <i>You can't win</i> ? <u> </u> |
| 4 Is <i>guy</i> an offensive word? <u> </u> |
| 5 Which phonetic symbols are given for <i>guy</i> ? <u> </u> |
| 6 Are these sentences correct?
a) I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them. <u> </u>
b) My dad wins a lot of money in his job. <u> </u> |

4 I can talk about English punctuation

A Punctuation marks

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 full stop | 7 apostrophe |
| 2 comma | 8 hyphen |
| 3 colon | 9 dash |
| 4 semicolon | 10 brackets |
| 5 question mark | 11 slash |
| 6 exclamation mark | 12 quotation marks |



- 1 Complete the words for the punctuation marks.

- com m a
1 full s _____
2 col _____
3 hyp _____
4 bra _____

- 5 question m _____
6 excl a _____ m _____
7 semi _____
8 apo _____

- 2 What punctuation is used in 1–8 below? You don't need to repeat *full stop* each time.

- We went home early. full stop
1 She had long, blonde hair. _____
2 What are you doing? _____
3 Congratulations! _____
4 It's too late. _____
5 I looked in the fridge; it was empty. _____
6 Someone (not me) left the door open. _____
7 A five-minute walk – and he still took a taxi. _____
8 'It's only me,' he said. _____

- 3  Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the punctuation marks. What are they?

B Punctuation rules

SOME IMPORTANT PUNCTUATION RULES

A **full stop** is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A **comma** in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to **separate** parts of a sentence, e.g. *After we left, someone tried to phone us.*
- between adjectives, e.g. *A big, expensive car.*
- to separate words in a **list**, though it is often **omitted** before **and**, e.g. *I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.*
- when words or phrases **interrupt** the normal progression of a sentence, e.g. *I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.*

A **colon** is often used to introduce further **details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. *The shop is full of antiques: dining tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors, and so on.*

A **semicolon** is sometimes used **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**, or to separate two main clauses, especially ones that aren't **joined** by a conjunction **such as** *and* or *but*, e.g. *I went round this morning; nobody was there.*

A **slash** separates words or phrases that are **alternatives**, e.g. *single/married.*

Glossary

- abbreviation** a short form of a word (e.g. *a.m.* is an **abbreviation** meaning 'in the morning').
- capital letter** *A B C* are **capital letters** (*a b c* are **small letters**).
- pause** a short period of time when sb stops talking.
- separate sb/sth** keep people or things away from each other. **SYN divide sb/sth**.
- list** a series of names, items, or numbers (e.g. a **shopping list**, a **list of countries**).
- omit sth** **FWL** If you **omit sth**, you don't include it. **SYN leave sth out**.

- interrupt sth** occur in the middle of sth and stop it continuing.
- details** small pieces of information about sth.
- instead of sb/sth** in the place of sb/sth.
- connect sth** put two or more things together.
SYN join sth.
- such as** You use **such as** to introduce an example.
SYN like.
- alternative** one of two or more things that you can choose between.

4 Complete the sentences.

- Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.
- 1 I wrote a _____ of irregular verbs in my notebook.
 - 2 I would use this dictionary _____ of the other one; it's much better.
 - 3 We often use *and* or *but* to _____ two parts of a sentence.
 - 4 In this application form, you have to give _____ of your work experience.
 - 5 I asked her to marry me. There was a long _____, and finally she said yes.
 - 6 Prep. is an _____ of preposition.
 - 7 You need to use more adjectives _____ as *beautiful*, *delightful*, and *attractive*.
 - 8 The teacher said we can _____ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.
 - 9 You can use brackets to _____ extra information from the rest of the sentence.
 - 10 The director had to _____ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.
 - 11 You could _____ the two sentences into one by using *so*.
 - 12 You can use a full stop, but the _____ is that you use a semicolon.

5 Find pairs of words in the box that go together for a reason. Write a sentence about them.

comma omit abbreviation join such as ✓ p.m. information
separate like ✓ leave out full stop details divide connect

- 'Such as' and 'like' mean the same thing.

6 What punctuation is missing, and where?

- We live in this house. A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.
- 1 she works in Bristol.
 - 2 He's a tall thin boy.
 - 3 The book is *in on* the table. Which is correct?
 - 4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them.
 - 5 When we arrived we went straight to a restaurant.
 - 6 This is my boyfriends watch.
 - 7 After that fortunately we had no more problems.
 - 8 We couldn't get in the door was locked.

Review: Learning

Unit 1

1 Rewrite the sentences. Change the part of speech of the underlined words.

- Did you discuss it? Did you have a discussion about it?
- 1 Could you translate this, please? Could you do _____?
 - 2 I've got to revise for an exam. I've got to do _____.
 - 3 Repetition helps me remember. It helps me remember if _____.
 - 4 How did he explain it? What was _____?
 - 5 Go on – guess! Go on – have _____!
 - 6 I record new words in a book. I keep _____.
 - 7 Did you chat about it? Did you have _____?
 - 8 How do you pronounce that word? What's _____?

2 Complete the text with words and phrases from the box.

make a note of go through texts ✓ translation pronounce make pronunciation gist experiment foreign guess context recognize

I've just started university and I'm studying Italian. We spend a lot of time reading ► texts – they're usually articles from Italian newspapers. They contain a lot of words you don't (1) _____, and to start with, you have to try to get the (2) _____ of the articles to show that you understand the general idea. In class we (3) _____ the texts and (4) _____ any useful new words. The teacher tells us to (5) _____ the meaning of new words by looking at the (6) _____ they are in. We then write a (7) _____ of them if we want to, and learn how to (8) _____ them correctly. I often (9) _____ mistakes with (10) _____, but I don't think it matters; it's important to (11) _____ with language; that's the best way to make progress. Next year, I'm starting another (12) _____ language: Russian. I'm really excited about that.

Unit 2

1 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- I want to learn Italian – nothing very specialized, just everyday Italian.
- 1 It was a very c _____ story – quite hard to understand.
 - 2 I don't know enough words, so my vocabulary needs to e _____ . That is my main a _____ on this course.
 - 3 I've lived in Costa Rica for five years now, and I can speak Spanish f _____ .
 - 4 You need to know the subject very well and talk about it in d _____ .
 - 5 There is now a wide r _____ of evening courses that you can do at the college.
 - 6 Does this drink c _____ alcohol?
 - 7 Some of the courses are too s _____ – I don't have the knowledge to do them.
 - 8 You have to complete each sentence with an a _____ word.

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

progress aware spoke✓ getting frustrating encouraging
while accurate motivated express

When I went to live in Argentina, I ► spoke some Spanish but I couldn't understand people when they spoke Spanish to me, so it was very (1) _____. But I was very (2) _____. I worked hard at my Spanish, and after a (3) _____ I could see that I was making a lot of (4) _____. It was also very (5) _____ when people told me that I was (6) _____.

better. My problem was that I still made a lot of mistakes, and I wasn't (7) _____ of them. Anyway, I kept trying, and after about a year, I was able to (8) _____ most things I needed to, and my Spanish was also quite (9) _____ – I only made a few mistakes.

Unit 3

1 Complete the words in the text.

When you meet a new word in a text, ► for example, *genuine*, you might want to look up the meaning in a dictionary. It's important to look at all the (1) d _____ in an (2) e _____, and then (3) s _____ the correct one, according to the context of the sentence. For (4) i _____, if the sentence is *I bought a genuine Velasquez painting*, you know the meaning is 'real' or 'authentic'. *Genuine* is a difficult word to pronounce, so it is worth looking at the phonetic (5) s _____, and note too how the word is (6) s _____; in fact, the (7) s _____ is on the first (8) s _____.

If you come across an (9) i _____ or (10) e _____ such as *under the weather*, you should check the meaning (it means 'feeling slightly ill'), and then look at the (11) s _____ of the phrase: is it formal or informal? This particular phrase isn't rude, but you certainly wouldn't want to (12) o _____ anyone, so it's always a good idea to check.

Unit 4

1 Read the text, then answer the questions below.

1 *I really want to leave home, so I went to see a flat last night. It had everything: a kitchen, a living room, a bathroom, a bedroom, and a study – and it was in a great location. I realized, however, that it would be too expensive for me on my own. I rang Mr Pavlides at the agency this morning; he offered to make it a bit cheaper, so I decided to take it. My mother was really pleased. 'You're moving out at last! But Michael, who's going to wash your shirts for you now?' she said.*

What punctuation is there:

- | | | |
|--|---------|-----------------------------------|
| ► after <i>home</i> in line 1 | a comma | 4 before <i>You're</i> in line 4? |
| 1 after <i>everything</i> in line 1? | | 5 after <i>last</i> in line 5? |
| 2 after <i>on my own</i> in line 3? | | 6 in <i>who's</i> in line 5? |
| 3 after <i>this morning</i> in line 3? | | 7 after <i>now</i> in line 5? |

2 Look at the text again. Complete the sentences.

- The first sentence begins with a capital letter.
- 1 There is a comma after *home*, which s _____ the two parts of the sentence.
 - 2 There is a colon after *everything*. It is often used before more d _____ or a l _____.
 - 3 In the sentence beginning *I realized*, the word *however* i _____ the progression of the sentence, so commas are used around it.
 - 4 After the word *morning* there is a semicolon. This can be used i _____ of a full stop when the two sentences are closely c _____.

5 I can talk about appearance

► Male appearance



He's got **broad shoulders**¹ He's tall and **skinny**, and is **well built**.



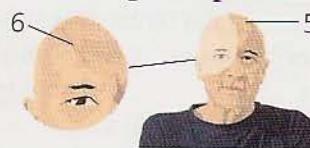
He's tall and **skinny**, but he's **in good shape**.



He's got thick **eyebrows**² and **stubble**³. He's **dark-skinned**⁴.
OPP **light-** OR **pale-skinned**.



He's quite **plump**, with a **fattish** face.



He's **clean-shaven** and **bald**⁵. He has a **scar**⁶ on his head.



He's **going bald** OR He's **losing his hair** OR His hair's **receding**.

Glossary

male Men and boys are **male**, women and girls are **female** (a person's **sex** is male or female).

well built with a solid, strong body. SYN **stocky**.

skinny very thin, but not in an attractive way.

in good/bad shape in good/bad physical condition.

plump quite fat, in a nice way.

fattish quite fat. (See *spotlight*, next page.)

clean-shaven without a beard or moustache.

1 One letter is missing from each word. Write the words correctly.

► skinny skinny

3 sca sc _____

6 clean-shave clean-sh _____

1 eyebrows

4 brod shoulders

7 in good sape

2 fattish

5 subble

2 Similar or different? Write S or D.

► fattish | plump S

5 dark-skinned | pale-skinned _____

1 skinny | dark-skinned _____

6 stubble | a scar _____

2 in good shape | in good condition _____

7 pale-skinned | light-skinned _____

3 go bald | be bald _____

8 He's losing his hair. | His hair's receding. _____

4 stocky | well built _____

9 male | female _____

3 Complete the questions. You will write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

In your family:

ABOUT YOUR FAMILY

ABOUT YOUR FAMILY

1 who's in good s _____ ?

5 who's well b _____ ?

2 who's going b _____ ?

6 who's sk _____ ?

3 who's c _____ -shaven?

7 who's dark-s _____ ?

4 who's got broad s _____ ?

8 who's got a s _____ on their body?

4 ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

5 Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the descriptions?

B Female appearance



This is my mother at 27 when she **was pregnant**; in fact, she was **expecting** me. She had a **pretty, roundish** face with beautiful **smooth skin** and long hair.

Here's Mum now; she looks **tanned**. She's still **slim** with a good **figure**. Her **appearance** hasn't changed much, but she's got a few **wrinkles**¹, she's **going grey**, and her hair's much shorter and **neater**. She wears **contact lenses**, and you can't **tell** that she's nearly 60.

spotlight -ish

The suffix **-ish** is used with some adjectives to mean 'quite'. A **roundish** face is a face which is quite round. Also: **tallish**, **youngish**, **fattish**, etc.

Glossary

be pregnant	• SYN be expecting a baby .	figure	• the shape of a woman's body.
pretty	• attractive and nice to look at (used especially about girls or young women).	appearance	• the way sb looks.
smooth	• with a completely flat surface. OPP rough .	go grey	• become grey-haired or white-haired.
skin	• Your skin covers your body.	OR white	
tanned	• having brown skin after spending time in the sun. tan N.	neat	• tidy and carefully arranged.
slim	• thin in an attractive way. SYN slender .	contact lenses	• small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better.
		tell sth	• know or guess sth.

6 True or false? Write T or F.

- If your hair is **neat**, it's tidy. T
- 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses.
- 2 Skin can be **rough** or **smooth**.
- 3 A **tallish** person is very tall.
- 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby.
- 5 You get **tanned** sitting in the sun.
- 6 Everyone has a good **figure**.
- 7 You usually use 'pretty' to describe a man.
- 8 Your hair can go **white** or **grey**.

7 Complete the sentences.

- Does she wear contact lenses ?
- 1 Her has gone grey, and it's completely changed her .
- 2 She's still very slim, so you can't she's a baby in July.
- 3 I'm feeling so old these days – look at these around my eyes!
- 4 My baby's skin is so to touch, but my hands are really .
- 5 She's got a beautiful **figure**: she's tall and .
- 6 You can she's been on holiday – she's got a lovely .

8 Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

6 I can talk about character

How I see myself

Dan (33) 'I'm **ambitious**, **self-confident**, and **generous**. I'm also very **impatient**.'



Kaz (18) 'I'm always **cheerful**, I'm **easy-going**, and I've got lots of **energy**.'



Giles (45) 'I see myself as **honest**, **hard-working**, and generally **tolerant**.'



How others see me

'Some people really like me; others think I'm **arrogant** and maybe **aggressive**.'

'My parents don't think I'm very **responsible**; my friends just think I'm **crazy**.'

'Other people probably think I'm a bit **dull**, without much **sense of humour**.'

spotlight *crazy, mad, stupid*

Crazy INF and **mad** mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'.

Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

Glossary

see sb as sth

- imagine or think of sb in a particular way.

ambitious

- having a strong desire to do well or be successful. OPP **unambitious**. **ambition** N.

self-confident

- feeling sure about your own ability. OPP **insecure**.

generous

- happy to give more money and help than is usual. OPP **mean**. **generosity** N.

impatient

- not able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb. OPP **patient**. **patience** N.

arrogant

- thinking you are better than other people. OPP **modest**. **arrogance** N.

aggressive

- likely to fight or argue. **aggression** N.

cheerful

- feeling happy.

easy-going

- relaxed and not worried by what other people do.

energy

- the ability to be very active without getting tired. **energetic** ADJ.

responsible

- able to act sensibly and intelligently. OPP **irresponsible**.

honest

- always telling the truth. OPP **dishonest**. **honesty** N.

hard-working

- able to work with effort and for a long time. OPP **lazy**.

tolerant

- able to accept ideas you don't agree with. OPP **intolerant**. **tolerance** N.

dull

- boring.

sense of humour

- the ability to laugh at things and see when sth is funny.

1 Positive or negative, or can it be both? Write P or N or B.

► She's very cheerful. P

► He's very ambitious. B

1 He's very arrogant.

5 She's so modest.

2 They're a bit dull.

6 He's very self-confident.

3 Both boys are very honest.

7 Karen is so mean.

4 My boss is very tolerant.

8 My brother is absolutely mad.

2 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------|-------------|-------------|
| ► onest | honest | 3 generos | 6 agressive |
| 1 energie | | 4 cheerfull | 7 paciente |
| 2 responsoble | | 5 energetik | 8 tolarant |

3 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------|
| ► feeling sure about your own ability | c | a aggressive |
| 1 boring | | b cheerful |
| 2 likely to fight or argue | | c self-confident ✓ |
| 3 thinking you are better than others | | d tolerant |
| 4 always telling the truth | | e sense of humour |
| 5 ability to laugh at things | | f dull |
| 6 feeling happy | | g arrogant |
| 7 unhappy to give money or help people | | h honest |
| 8 able to accept ideas you don't agree with | | i mean |

4 Complete the tables.

ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE	ADJECTIVE	NOUN
► patient	impatient	ambitious	ambition
honest		honest	
responsible		tolerant	
lazy		aggressive	
generous		arrogant	
ambitious		generous	
self-confident		patient	

5 Complete the words in each sentence.

- If you disagree with Matthew, he can get a bit aggressive.
- 1 My brother's a bit irresponsible and does some c things; but he's OK.
 - 2 Keiko's a good person to share a flat with: she's very e -g.
 - 3 I like Zoltan; he's got a great s of h.
 - 4 Hamdi is a fantastic musician, but very few people realize this because he's so m.
 - 5 Since Katy got a new job and a boyfriend, she's become more s -c.
 - 6 My brother's lazy, but my sisters have always been very h -w.
 - 7 I don't think young Andy is r enough to drive a car.
 - 8 Andrea has so much e; she's always doing something.

6 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you ambitious? If so, in what way?
- 2 Would you say you're hard-working or a bit lazy?
- 3 Are you intolerant of anything? If so, what?
- 4 When do you get impatient?
- 5 How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives.
- 6 Which two qualities do you think are the most important: honesty, patience, tolerance, or generosity?

7 Test yourself. Cover your opposites and nouns in Exercise 4 and test yourself. Then cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What do they mean?

7 I can describe my feelings

A Feelings



Word	Example	Meaning
thrilled	<i>He was thrilled to win and he kissed the cup.</i>	very happy and excited. SYN delighted .
furious	<i>I lost his keys: he was absolutely furious.</i>	very angry.
astonished	<i>I was astonished to hear he was married.</i>	very surprised. SYN amazed .
heartbroken	<i>She was heartbroken when her father died.</i>	very sad and emotionally upset.
terrified	<i>I was terrified when the plane took off.</i>	very frightened. SYN scared stiff INF.
miserable	<i>You look very miserable. What's wrong?</i>	unhappy and depressed. SYN fed up INF.
proud	<i>I felt very proud when my book was published.</i>	pleased about sth you or other people have done.
jealous	<i>My boyfriend is jealous when I'm with other boys. I've always been jealous of Tom; everyone likes him.</i>	1 angry or sad because you're afraid of losing sb's love. 2 angry or sad because sb has sth you don't have. SYN envious .
anxious	<i>He was anxious before he went into hospital.</i>	worried and afraid.
upset	<i>Sally was very upset because no one spoke to her.</i>	sad and angry because of sth that has happened.

1 Complete the words and phrases.

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| ► amazed | 4 thr_____ |
| 1 anx_____ | 5 _____ broken |
| 2 fur_____ | 6 scared _____ |
| 3 ast_____ | 7 ki_____ |

spotlight *absolutely* and *very*

Use **absolutely** before extreme adjectives, e.g. *furious, astonished, heartbroken, terrified*.

Use **very** before degree adjectives, e.g. *miserable, jealous, anxious, upset*.

I was absolutely amazed. (NOT **very** amazed.)
They were very proud. (NOT **absolutely** proud.)

2 Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

- | | | | |
|------------|---------|----------------|--------------|
| ► worried | anxious | 2 fed up | 4 astonished |
| 1 thrilled | _____ | 3 scared stiff | 5 envious |

3 ABOUT YOU How might you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

- Someone hits your car because they were driving badly. *I'd be furious.*
- 1 You've just passed an important exam. *I'd be _____.*
- 2 Your best friend has bought a car that you would love to have. *_____.*
- 3 Your lovely old dog has just died. *_____.*
- 4 A man walks up to you in the street and holds a knife to your face. *_____.*
- 5 You're on holiday but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold. *_____.*
- 6 You see someone you don't know kissing your boyfriend/girlfriend. *_____.*
- 7 You have been chosen to make a speech at an important event. *_____.*
- 8 You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying. *_____.*

4 Test yourself. Cover the meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

B How emotional are you?

ABOUT YOU

YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

- a I'm an emotional person and I like to show my feelings.
- b I think I'm quite sensitive, so I try not to upset other people.
- c I'm sensitive about my appearance.
- d When I'm in a bad mood, I sometimes hurt people's feelings.
- e In general, I think I'm quite a moody person.
- f When people have personal problems, I think I'm usually very sympathetic and supportive.

Are you like this?

- Yes/No
- Yes/No
- Yes/No
- Yes/No
- Yes/No
- Yes/No

spotlight **sensitive**

Sensitive has two meanings:

- 1 a positive meaning: 'able to understand people's feelings and problems' (e.g. sentence (b) above). OPP **insensitive**.
- 2 a more negative meaning: 'easily upset' (e.g. sentence (c) above).

Glossary

emotional having strong feelings, and often showing them. **emotion** N.

show your feelings express your feelings openly. OPP **hide your feelings**.

upset sb make sb unhappy.

be in a bad mood feel angry or unhappy at a particular time. OPP **be in a good mood**.

hurt sb's feelings say sth that makes sb unhappy.

moody If you are **moody**, you often change and become angry or unhappy for no obvious reason.

sympathetic kind and showing you understand sb's problems (**sympathetic** doesn't mean 'friendly' or 'nice' in English).

supportive giving help to sb who has a problem.

5 Circle the correct answer.

- Try not to hurt / upset his feelings.
- 1 Sarah's not very emotional, and tends to show/hide her feelings.
- 2 You can talk to Gary easily about your problems; he's very sympathetic/moody.
- 3 Be careful what you say to Susan because she's very sympathetic/sensitive.
- 4 You never know what Karen will be like because she's so moody/supportive.
- 5 Brian is the most emotional/insensitive man I know; he upsets everyone.
- 6 Love, anger, and fear are all emotions/moods.

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- Caroline is very sensitive. She seems to know when someone has a problem.
- 1 Keep away from Elton – he's in a bad today.
- 2 He his parents because he was so rude to them.
- 3 My children cooked all my meals when I was ill. They were very .
- 4 I broke my leg and it was really painful, but my friends weren't very .
- 5 I'm a really good mood today. I think it's the fantastic weather.
- 6 Paul tends to upset people and their feelings.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire, or ask another student.

8 I can talk about relationships

A Friendship

Word	Example	Meaning
friendship	<i>Our friendship has always been very important to us.</i>	the relationship between people who are friends.
make friends	<i>I find it difficult to make friends.</i>	form friendly relationships.
get on (well) with sb	<i>Do you get on well with your classmates?</i>	have a good relationship with sb. OPP not get on with sb.
rely on sb reliable ADJ	<i>I can always rely on my sisters. My brother's not very reliable.</i>	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do. SYN depend on sb.
trust sb	<i>You have to trust your friends.</i>	believe sb is good and won't hurt you.
loyal	<i>He was very loyal to my father.</i>	being a friend to sb, even in difficult times. OPP disloyal .
sociable	<i>She's very sociable and gets on well with people.</i>	A sociable person likes the company of other people. OPP antisocial .
keep in touch	<i>Simon is an old friend. We've always kept in touch.</i>	(of two or more people) stay in contact by speaking or writing to each other.

1 Combine words in the box to make phrases.

- rely ✓ friend get on well friends on someone ✓ a close keep make in touch on someone depend with someone
- rely on someone

spotlight friend

An **old friend** is someone you have known for a long time; a **close friend** is someone you know and like very much. If you **are friendly with sb**, you treat them as a friend.

2 Answer the questions.

- Another way of saying 'stay in contact with someone' is *keep in touch*.....
- 1 Rely (on) is a verb. What's the adjective?
- 2 What's a synonym for *rely on*?
- 3 A *sociable* person enjoys the company of others. What's the opposite?
- 4 What's the opposite of *loyal*?
- 5 What's the relationship between people who are friends?
- 6 What do you call a friend you like very much? A friend.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- He's a bit antisocial. **SOCIAL** He isn't very *sociable*.
- 1 He likes Ruben. **FRIENDLY**
- 2 She never phones us. **TOUCH**
- 3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. **GET ON**
- 4 I became her friend at university. **MAKE**
- 5 My boss is very reliable. **RELY**
- 6 I've known Donna for a long time. **OLD**

4 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

B When things go wrong

Perfect Weekend Channel Five

Wednesday 9 p.m. – 11 p.m.

TV drama about a group of young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend. But things soon **go wrong**. John doesn't get on with Dan, and now **realizes** they **have nothing in common**, while Pete **regrets** the fact that he **split up** with Amy, the girl he used to **go out with**. Now Amy is **in a serious relationship** with Keith (who didn't go to university), and Keith doesn't like Amy's old friends. This creates tension in the group, and soon there's a big **row**. Amy **falls out** with Pete, and Dan and John stop speaking to each other. And that's just the beginning ...

spotlight **have a row / an argument**

Both phrases mean 'have an angry discussion', e.g. *I had a row with Li.*

The verb related to *argument* is **argue**, e.g. *They argued with each other.*

Glossary

get to know sb meet sb a number of times and become friends.

one another each other.

get together (of two or more people) meet for a social reason.

go wrong used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship.

realize sth begin to understand sth that you didn't know before.

have nothing in common (of two people) have no interests that are the same. opp **have a lot in common**.

regret sth / doing sth feel sorry about sth you did or didn't do.

split up with sb stop being in a romantic relationship with sb.

go out with sb have sb as a boyfriend or girlfriend. **in a (serious) relationship** having a long-term boyfriend or girlfriend.

fall out with sb argue with sb and stop being friendly with them.

5 Circle the correct word.

- They were very happy, then something got went wrong.
1 Hana's by/in a serious relationship. 4 They have lots in/on common.
2 Lian and Chen have fallen out/on. 5 She got/went out with Len at university.
3 Shall we come/get together next week? 6 How did you get/go to know Anya?

6 Complete the missing words.

- I went out with Osman for two months, then we fell out over something stupid.
1 I don't get on with Dirk. We a lot, and last week we had a terrible r.
2 I'd like to get to k Anders better because we have a lot in c.
3 Karli s up with him last week and I think she r it now; she's a bit depressed.
4 We have nothing in common. That's why I r I could never g o with him.

7 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ► know one (1) when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in (2) and got on really well, but, unfortunately, he was in a serious (3) at the time. Then it all went (4) . He and his girlfriend Inez had a big (5) and he (6) up with her. We started to (7) out with each other almost immediately, but Milo soon (8) his decision to end his relationship with Inez. He (9) he was still in love with her, and that our relationship was a big mistake.

9 I can talk about families

A Family relationships

Marilyn Monroe was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**, but she lived with **foster parents** until she was seven, and then she was **adopted** by her mother's best friend. She got married at sixteen, and she got **divorced** three times.



Bill Clinton's father died before he was born. His mother, Virginia, had to find a way to **support** Bill, so she studied nursing, and Bill was **brought up** by his grandparents. When Bill was four, his mother married Roger Clinton, who became Bill's **stepfather**. Roger and Virginia had a son called Roger, who is Bill Clinton's **half-brother**.

Glossary

only child a child with no brothers or sisters.

single parent a mother or father who looks after their children alone.

foster parent sb who looks after another person's child in their home for a time.

adopt a child take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child.

get divorced legally end your marriage. SYN **get a divorce**.

support sb help someone live by giving them money, food, or a home.

bring sb up look after a child and teach them how to live.

stepfather a man who has married your mother but is not your father (related words: **stepmother**, **stepson**, **stepdaughter**, **stepbrother**, **stepsister**).

half-brother, **half-sister** a brother or sister who has either the same mother or the same father as you.

1 Complete the words or phrases.

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| ► step mother | 3 f parents | 6 ad a child |
| 1 an o child | 4 s father | 7 s parent |
| 2 h -sister | 5 get orced | 8 br somebody up |

2 Same or different? Write S or D.

- She's a single parent. | She's a foster parent. **D**
- 1 He's an only child. | He hasn't got any brothers or sisters. _____
- 2 He's my half-brother. | He's my stepbrother. _____
- 3 He's my stepson. | He's my wife's son by her first marriage. _____
- 4 She was adopted as a baby. | She lived with foster parents as a baby. _____
- 5 She's my half-sister. | She's my mother's sister. _____
- 6 Our uncle supported us. | Our uncle brought us up. _____

3 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 Where were you **b** up?
- 2 Have you got any brothers or sisters, or are you an **o** child?
- 3 Do you have any **h** brothers or -sisters?
- 4 Do you know anyone who is a **s** parent? If so, who?
- 5 Do you know anyone who has recently got **d**?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Family history

I'm related to a member of the royal family.

We have **ancestors** who were Russian **immigrants**. They **emigrated from** Russia **to** Britain in the nineteenth century.

I'm from London, but **previous generations** of my family lived in Malta.

Some of my **relatives** were **originally** from China.

I **look like** my grandmother, but I **take after** my father. We're both very lazy!



Glossary

be related to sb	be in the same family as sb. relative N. SYN relation .
member	a person who is in a group such as a family or a club.
royal	relating to a king or queen (see picture).
ancestor	a person in your family who lived a long time ago.
immigrant	a person who comes to a foreign country to live there.
emigrate from ... to ...	leave your country in order to live in another.
previous	happening before the one you are talking about.
generation	all the people in a family born at about the same time.
originally	in the beginning, before other things happened.
look like sb	have the same appearance as sb.
take after sb	be like an older member of your family.

5 Circle the correct answer.

- Our ancestors were Italian immigrants/members.
 - 1 She's one of my ancestors/relatives; she was born in 1880.
 - 2 Janet looks like/takes after her daughter.
 - 3 My ancestors emigrated/related to Australia a century ago.
 - 4 Are your relations/immigrants from Italy?
 - 5 I'm originally/Previously from Rome: that's where I was born.
 - 6 He's married to a member/generation of the royal family.

6 Complete the questions.

- ▶ What do you know about your ancestors ?
 - 1 Are you related to anyone famous?
 - 2 Do you have a royal family in your country?
If so, do you have a king or a queen ?
 - 3 Where do/did the previous generations of your family live?
 - 4 Which member of your family do you look like ?
 - 5 Do you take a resemblance to your mother or your father? How?

ABOUT YOU

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

10 I can talk about weddings and funerals

A A typical British wedding



When two people are planning to get married, they can **choose** to have a **religious ceremony** or a **civil ceremony**. On the **wedding** day, the **groom**¹ is helped by a **best man**² who brings the **rings** to the wedding ceremony. The **bride**³ may have one or more **bridesmaids**⁴. Afterwards, there is a **reception** for the **couple** and the wedding

guests⁵. It's **traditional** for the best man and the groom to **make speeches**, and then everyone **drinks a toast** to the **couple**, and **wishes** them a long and happy **marriage**. After the reception, they usually go on their **honeymoon**. On the same day every year after that, the couple **celebrate** their wedding **anniversary**.

Glossary

choose sth PT **chose** PP **chosen** decide which thing you want. **choice** N.

ceremony a formal public event.

religious A **religious ceremony** takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. **religion** N.

civil A **civil ceremony** is a non-religious one.

wedding a time when a man and woman get married.

rings



wedding reception a meal and/or party after a wedding.

traditional A **traditional** thing is sth that people have done for a long time.

make a speech give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event.

drink a toast to sb raise a glass of wine, etc. to wish sb success or happiness.

wish sb sth say that you hope good things will happen to sb.

honeymoon a holiday for a couple who have just got married.

celebrate sth have a special meal, party, etc. to show you are happy about sth.

anniversary the date on which sth happened the previous year or in the past.

spotlight *wedding and marriage; bride and groom*

A **wedding** is the ceremony for a **couple** (two people who are getting married). **Marriage** is the relationship between a husband and wife.

*We went to my sister's **wedding** on Saturday.*

*Jack and Dana's **marriage** lasted 40 years.*

On the wedding day, the couple are called the **bride** and **groom**. After they are married, they become **husband** and **wife**.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some words are correct.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------|--------------|-------|
| ► mariage | marriage | 7 weding | |
| 1 annversery | | 8 honeymoon | |
| 2 I've choosen it | | 9 speach | |
| 3 tradicional | | 10 gest | |
| 4 civile | | 11 ceremonie | |
| 5 bridesmaid | | 12 recepcion | |
| 6 celebrate | | 13 religian | |

2 Circle the correct word.

- Jane and Mark's wedding/marriage is next Saturday.
- 1 Mark is the groom/best man.
 - 2 The bridesmaid/bride is Mark's sister.
 - 3 They have chosen/wished a religious ceremony.
 - 4 They've invited about sixty brides/guests to the wedding.
 - 5 The reception will be before/after the wedding ceremony.
 - 6 The rings will be brought to the ceremony by the couple/best man.
 - 7 Speeches are traditional at the reception/best man.
 - 8 When they're on their honeymoon, Jane and Mark will be bride and groom/husband and wife.

3 Complete the phrases using words from the box.

- groom ceremony a speech man a toast ceremony✓
reception your honeymoon anniversary a happy marriage
- wedding ceremony 5 bride and _____
1 go on _____ 6 celebrate your _____
2 drink _____ 7 a religious _____
3 wish someone _____ 8 the best _____
4 make _____ 9 a wedding _____

4 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

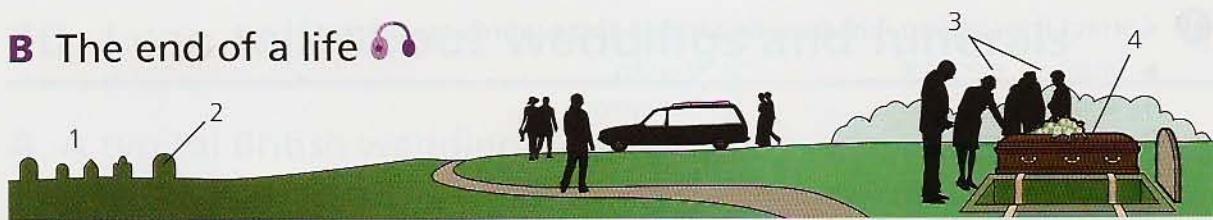
- 1 Can people _____ to have a religious ceremony or a _____ ceremony?
- 2 Does the groom have a _____ man at the ceremony?
- 3 Does the bride have any _____ with her?
- 4 In the ceremony, do the bride and groom put on wedding _____?
- 5 Is there usually a _____ after the ceremony?
- 6 How many _____ are usually invited?
- 7 Is it _____ for people to _____ speeches?
- 8 Do people usually drink a _____ to the bride and groom?
- 9 Do the _____ traditionally go on their _____ after the wedding?
- 10 Do people usually _____ their wedding anniversary every year?

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the text. Can you remember the words for the people?

B The end of a life



1 graves 2 gravestone 3 mourners; the family are in mourning 4 coffin

Word	Example	Meaning
die (die of an illness) death N , dead adj	<i>He died of old age.</i> <i>His death was very sad.</i>	stop living.
widow	<i>Mark's widow never remarried.</i>	a woman whose husband has died.
widower	<i>He's been a widower for years.</i>	a man whose wife has died.
funeral	<i>The funeral was at the church.</i>	a ceremony after sb dies.
bury sb, burial N	<i>He was buried this morning.</i>	put a dead body in the ground.
cremate sb cremation N	<i>My grandmother wasn't buried; she was cremated.</i>	burn the body of a dead person as part of a funeral.
cemetery	<i>He's buried in that cemetery.</i>	a place where dead people are buried.
will N	<i>He left his sister €10,000 in his will.</i>	a document that says who will have your money or things when you die.
inherit sth inheritance N	<i>I inherited €1,000 from my uncle.</i>	receive money or things from sb when they die.

7 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| ► ded <u>dead</u> | 3 <u>funral</u> | 6 <u>deth</u> |
| 1 widoer | 4 <u>bry</u> | 7 <u>cemetry</u> |
| 2 gravstone | 5 <u>inerit</u> | 8 <u>cofin</u> |

8 Circle the correct words or phrases.

- We went to the coffin/cemetery/funeral yesterday.
- 1 The old lady died/is dead/is death last Tuesday.
 - 2 My grandfather's name is on the death/will/gravestone.
 - 3 I met Jack at the funeral/burial/widow.
 - 4 My grandfather was inherited/buried/cremated when he died.
 - 5 Mrs Erikson was a widow/widower/mourner.
 - 6 My wife was standing near the grave/coffin/cremation.

9 Complete the text.

I never knew my grandfather, because he ► died in 1960, before I was born. He died (1) heart problems. My grandmother was (2) mourning for a long time. She didn't marry again; she was a (3) widow for thirty years. I was very sad at the news of her (4) death in 1990. I can remember her (5) funeral at our local church. She was (6) buried in the cemetery near the park. She left my mother some money in her (7) will, and my uncle (8) inherited her house.

10

Test yourself. Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

Review: People

Unit 5

1 Circle the correct answer.

- My uncle is going black/grey.
- 1 Is she waiting for/expecting a baby?
 - 2 Do you wear contact/content lenses?
 - 3 Ahmed always looks very neat/plump and tidy.
 - 4 You can't know/tell that she's in her fifties.
 - 5 She goes to the gym every day; that's why she still has a great appearance/figure.
 - 6 Olga was very bald/tanned after her holiday in Portugal.
 - 7 You get a few scars/wrinkles round your eyes as you get older.
 - 8 My boss is in his forties but still in good shape/figure.

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Emilio's well built, with broad _____.
- 2 My dad's completely _____; now my older brother is _____ his hair as well.
- 3 He got the _____ on his leg when he fell off his bike as a child.
- 4 I don't think his _____ has changed much in the last 20 years: he's still in good _____.
- 5 My father has always been clean-_____ – never had a beard.
- 6 I wouldn't say she's fat, but she is quite _____.

Unit 6

1 Complete the table.

Adjective	Meaning	Noun	Opp of adjective
ambitious	having a strong desire to be successful.	ambition	unambitious
generous	happy to give more money and help than is usual.		
honest	always telling the truth.		
tolerant	able to accept ideas you don't agree with.		
patient	able to stay calm and wait for sth.		
arrogant	thinking you are better than other people.		
hard-working	able to work with effort and for a long time.	XXXXXX	

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is he energetic? ~ No, he's got no energy.
- 1 That was a mad thing to do. ~ Yes, absolutely.
 - 2 Do you find him interesting? ~ No, I think he's a _____ man.
 - 3 Do you think you're hard-working? ~ To be honest, no – I'm quite _____.
 - 4 He's always looking for a fight. ~ Yes, I find him very _____.
 - 5 She never laughs at anything. ~ I know, she's got no _____ of _____.
 - 6 He's such a happy person. ~ Yes, he's always very _____.

Unit 7

1 Replace the underlined word with either a synonym or an opposite.

- Is he always in such a bad mood? SYN terrible OPP good
- 1 Michael is usually very sensitive. OPP _____
- 2 Why are they so miserable? SYN _____
- 3 We were amazed to see her. SYN _____
- 4 He never shows his feelings. OPP _____
- 5 I was terrified when it happened. SYN _____
- 6 I was delighted with my results. SYN _____

2 Are these sentences logical? If not, cross out the word that is not logical and replace it with a better word.

- I was astonished that I passed the exam, but really miserable. delighted
- She's very emotional, so she tends to show her feelings a lot. This is logical.
- 1 He was furious with me, and I was thrilled. _____
- 2 She was so proud when her son did well, and really jealous. _____
- 3 I was anxious before the flight, and scared stiff by the time we took off. _____
- 4 I don't know what upset her, but she was thrilled. _____
- 5 She can be very insensitive and often hurts people's feelings. _____
- 6 I can't talk to her because she's insensitive and very supportive. _____

Unit 8

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- Paulo split / with Simone last week. up
- 1 Petros and I have nothing common. _____
- 2 How did you get know her? _____
- 3 I like Imran; we get very well. _____
- 4 Don't forget to keep touch. _____
- 5 You can't rely her brother. _____
- 6 I don't think they're a relationship at the moment. _____

2 Complete the sentences. Keep the meaning the same as in the sentences on the left.

- Being friends with Tomi is important to me. My friendship with Tomi is important to me.
- 1 He just likes being with people. He's very _____.
- 2 I understand what happened now. I _____ what happened.
- 3 He's been my friend in difficult times. He's been very _____.
- 4 I went out for a meal with the others last week. We got _____ for a meal last week.
- 5 We share a lot of interests. We have a lot in _____.
- 6 They argue a lot. They have a lot of _____.
- 7 She's sorry that it happened. She _____ that it happened.
- 8 I can always depend on my sister. My sister is very _____.

Unit 9

1 Which words are being defined?

- a member of your family. relative
- 1 a person who comes from a foreign country to live in your country. _____
- 2 a woman who married your father but who is not your mother. _____

- 3 someone in your family who lived a long time ago. _____
- 4 take a child into your family and make them your child legally. _____
- 5 have the same appearance as someone. _____
- 6 be like an older member of your family. _____
- 7 end a marriage legally. _____
- 8 all the people in a family born at about the same time. _____

2 Complete the text.

John Lennon's ► ancestors were Irish (1) _____ who came to live in Liverpool. John was an (2) _____ child in a single (3) _____ family. When he was five, his mother gave John to her sister, Mimi, to look after, so he was (4) _____ up by his aunt. Lennon got married in 1962 to Cynthia, and had a son, Julian. Sadly, the marriage went wrong. The Lennons got (5) _____ in 1968, and Julian was brought (6) _____ by his mother. Lennon remarried in 1969, this time marrying Yoko Ono, who already had a daughter, Kyoko, from a (7) _____ marriage which had ended in divorce. John and Yoko had a son called Sean. Julian and Sean are (8) _____ -brothers, and Julian and Kyoko are (9) _____ brother and (10) _____ sister.

Unit 10

1 Find 11 more words or phrases related to weddings in the word square.

D	R	I	N	K	A	T	O	A	S	T	P
C	E	R	M	W	P	D	O	C	S	A	M
E	D	D	U	E	S	J	R	O	R	C	A
R	I	N	G	D	S	H	R	U	E	X	K
E	P	I	G	D	X	O	Z	P	C	U	E
M	A	R	R	I	A	G	E	L	E	G	A
O	W	U	O	N	V	I	N	E	P	O	S
N	U	D	O	G	G	U	E	S	T	L	P
Y	E	S	M	I	F	U	R	O	I	G	E
H	O	N	E	Y	M	O	O	N	O	D	E
K	L	I	S	H	M	E	X	O	N	I	C
D	B	R	I	D	E	S	M	A	I	D	H

2 Complete the texts.

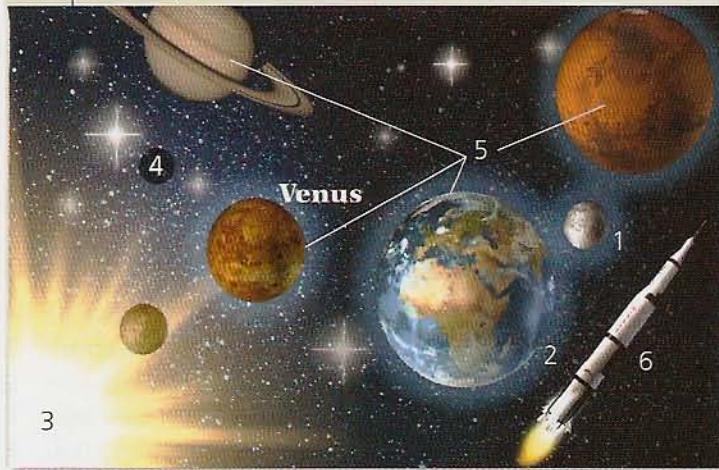
When my neighbour Mr Patrick ► died recently, I went to his (1) _____. His wife died ten years ago, so he had been a (2) _____ for a long time. He always wanted to be (3) _____ in the cemetery next to his wife. There were a lot of (4) _____ at the funeral: mostly family and old friends. His son, Malcolm, (5) _____ his house, and I believe he's going to move back to live in it.

My cousin, Elizabeth, got married last year. She and her ► husband _____, Martin, had to (6) _____ whether to have a religious (7) _____ or a (8) _____ one. In the end, they (9) _____ a religious wedding. She was a beautiful (10) _____, and Martin looked fantastic. Martin's brother, Steve, was the (11) _____ man. It was a very traditional ceremony, and afterwards there was a (12) _____ at a hotel near the church. Next week it will be their first wedding (13) _____, so the family is going to get together to (14) _____ with a big party.

11 I can describe the universe

A The universe

- The **moon**¹ is a **satellite** of the **earth**²; **in other words**, it **circles** around the earth. This takes **approximately** 28 days.
- The earth **revolves** around the sun every 365 days.
- The **sun**³ is a star, but seems much larger than other **stars**⁴ because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately eight minutes to **reach** the earth.
- Nine **planets**⁵ revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the **solar system**.
- Seventy-five years ago, sending **rockets**⁶ into **space** seemed **far-fetched**, but now it is a fact of life and we have **gained** considerable **knowledge** of the earth's satellite and our solar system.



Glossary

universe the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars.

satellite an object that moves round a bigger object in space.

in other words used for saying sth in a different way.

circle sth go round sth in a circle.
SYN **revolve around sth**.

approximately about. SYN **roughly**.

reach sth arrive at a place.

space the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars.

far-fetched not easy to believe because it is very improbable.

gain sth get more and more of sth useful, such as knowledge or experience.

knowledge what you know and understand about sth.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

- The sun circles the earth. moon 4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969. sun
- 1 The planets are in the solar space. space 5 Venus is a star. planet
- 2 The earth revolves around the moon. moon 6 We can send planes into space. rockets
- 3 The sun is a planet. sun 7 The stars are part of the earth. sun

2 Complete the sentences.

- There are billions of stars in the universe.
1 Is it important to send rockets into space?
2 The earth revolves around the sun: **in other words**, earth is a planet in our solar system.
3 The Venus Express rocket took five months to reach the planet Venus.
4 The idea of human life on Mars is far-fetched.
5 We have gained a lot of knowledge about the solar system in recent years.
6 The earth revolves around the sun every 365 days.
7 My knowledge of space is very limited. I'd like to learn more about it.
8 The moon is a satellite of the earth.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text and name everything in the picture.

B Scientific exploration

Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent satellites to explore the surface of Mars, and carried out experiments to see if they can discover any signs of life. So far, they haven't found any, but an analysis of rocks from Mars has confirmed that they were created by the presence of water and wind. In other words, life could have existed in the past.



Glossary

scientist	• a person who studies the physical world.
satellite	• a piece of electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around.
explore sth	• travel round a place in order to learn about it.
carry out sth	• do and complete a task.
experiment	• a scientific test done in order to learn sth.
analysis	• a careful study of sth in order to explain it. analyse v.
confirm sth	• say or show that sth is true or definite. confirmation n.
exist	• If sth exists, it is present in the real world. existence n.

spotlight *discover or invent?*

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** n. If you **invent** something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** n.

They've discovered a new planet. Who invented the telescope?

4 Circle the correct word.

- There was an experiment/exploration to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
- 1 These animals only explore/exist in South America – nowhere else.
- 2 They're going to explore/analyse the area to see what they can find.
- 3 The discovery/invention of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
- 4 Scientists have carried out/confirmed experiments on animals.
- 5 Who invented/discovered the life-saving drug penicillin?
- 6 We've got the data, so now we need to analyse/explore it.

5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- | | |
|--|----------|
| ► Television was an incredible <u>invention</u> . | INVENT |
| 1 There's a report from a group of _____ . | SCIENCE |
| 2 The _____ of penicillin was of major importance. | DISCOVER |
| 3 We're waiting for _____ of the results. | CONFIRM |
| 4 There will be an _____ of the findings in the laboratory. | ANALYSE |
| 5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space _____ . | EXPLORE |
| 6 Humans are always looking for the _____ of new life forms. | EXIST |

6 Complete the sentences.

- The police discovered drugs inside his shoes.
- 1 At the moment there is no evidence that life _____ on Mars.
- 2 They left camp and went to _____ the countryside to see what they could find.
- 3 With the use of _____, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
- 4 Scientists believe they will have to _____ out further experiments.
- 5 I don't know who first _____ the camera. Do you?
- 6 We knew he was ill, but the doctors have now _____ that it's serious.

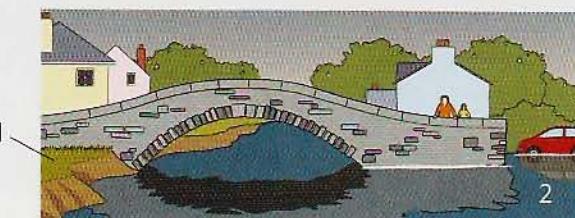
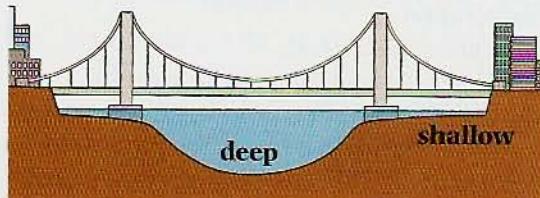
7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

12 I can talk about rivers and the sea

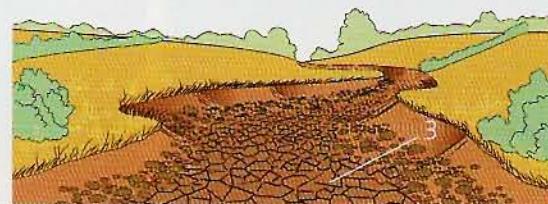
A Water

RIVERS

wide river



narrow river

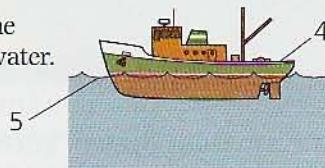


Rivers **flow** to the sea. A river can be **wide** (**width** **N**) and **deep** (**depth** **N**) or **narrow** and **shallow**. If it rains heavily, a river can **burst** its **banks**¹, which **causes** **floods**². If there is no rain for a long time, the river **dries up**³.

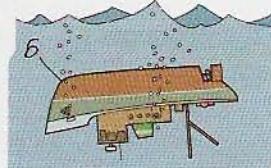
THE SEA and OCEANS

The **tide** comes in (**high tide**) and goes out (**low tide**) twice a day.

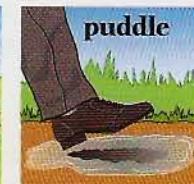
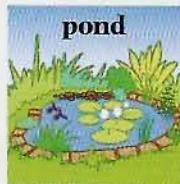
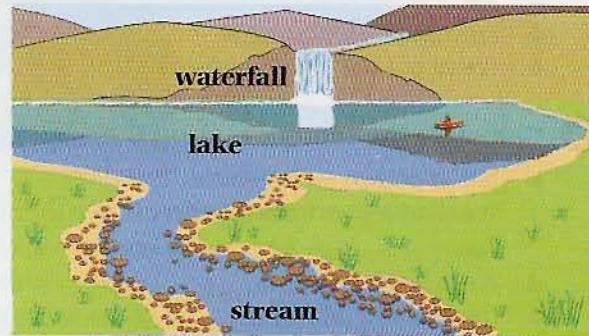
Boats **float**⁴ on the **surface**⁵ of the water.



In bad weather, a boat can **capsize** and **sink**⁶. People on the boat may be trapped **underwater** and may **drown**.



DIFFERENT AREAS OF WATER



Glossary

flow move smoothly (like water).

burst break open suddenly and violently.

ocean a very big sea, e.g. the Atlantic Ocean.

tide the regular change in the sea level caused by the moon and sun.

capsize (used of boats) turn over in the water.

underwater happening or existing below the surface of the water.

drown die in water because you can't breathe.

spotlight **cause** **V, N**

To **cause** something is to make something (often unpleasant) happen.

*The wind **caused** problems for cyclists.*

The **cause** of something is the person or thing that makes it happen.

*The police don't know the **cause** of the accident.*

1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- | | | | | | |
|-------|----------|-------|-------|----------|-------|
| ► lak | lake | 6 | narro | | |
| 1 | flod | | 7 | pudle | |
| 2 | high tid | | 8 | dron | |
| 3 | shalow | | 9 | waterfal | |
| 4 | flot | | 10 | ocen | |
| 5 | suface | | | | |

2 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|---|--------------|
| ► the tide | i | a | capsized |
| 1 | burst | b | to the sea |
| 2 | the river | c | its banks |
| 3 | low | d | dried up |
| 4 | the width | e | in the lake |
| 5 | it flows | f | river |
| 6 | drown | g | of the river |
| 7 | a shallow | h | tide |
| 8 | the boat | i | went out ✓ |

3 Yes or No? Write Y or N.

- | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|--|-------|--------------------|--|-------|
| ► Do streams have a tide? | N | 6 | Can a pond dry up? | | |
| 1 | Is the depth of a river the same as its width? | | 7 | Can people swim up a waterfall? | |
| 2 | Can you have a high tide and a low tide? | | 8 | Can people sit on the bank of a river? | |
| 3 | Do puddles form when it rains a lot? | | 9 | Are canals deeper than seas? | |
| 4 | Can people float in water? | | 10 | Does water flow in a pond? | |
| 5 | Can people capsize? | | | | |

4 Circle the correct word.

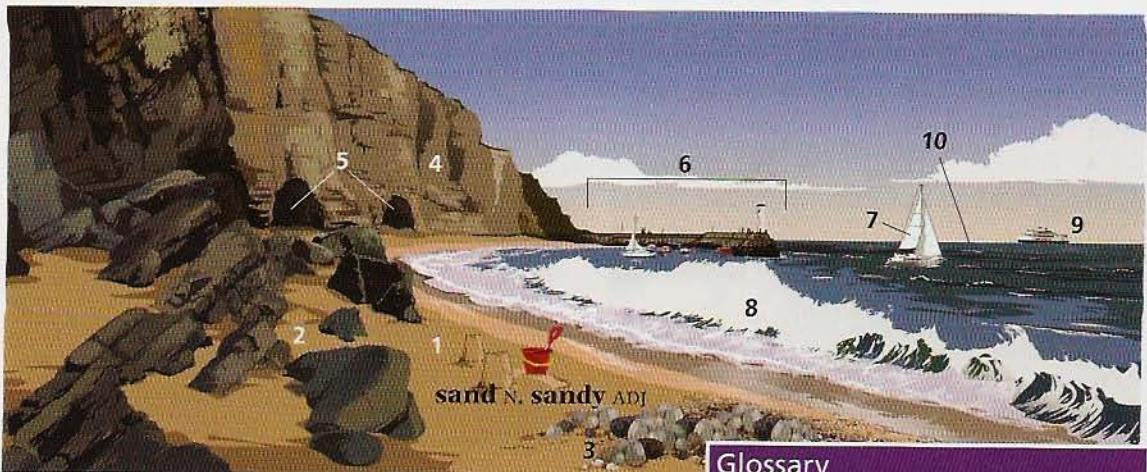
- The River Seine floats/flows through Paris.
- 1 The leaves floated on the surface/underwater.
 - 2 I went sailing on the pond/lake.
 - 3 The ship capsized/drowned in the storm.
 - 4 I swam across the whole depth/width of the river.
 - 5 There's a little stream/tide at the end of our garden.
 - 6 Sadly the dog drowned/sank when the ship capsized.
 - 7 You can stand up in the river here; it's very narrow/shallow.
 - 8 Our furniture got very wet during the floods/tides.

5 Complete the texts with a suitable word in the correct form.

We had some storms with very heavy rain last summer. The river which runs through the city (1) its banks, and (2) serious floods. The water was quite (3) : it was two metres in some parts, and you could see people's possessions (4) in the water.

We had a terrible day sailing on a (5) in the mountains last weekend. The wind was very strong, and suddenly our little boat (6) and we ended up in the water. We swam to safety, but watched the boat slowly (7) to the bottom. Later we discovered it was very dangerous there, and last year someone (8)

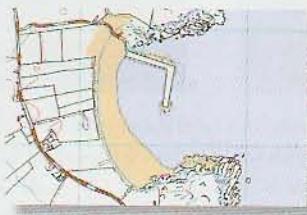
B The coast



sand N. **sandy** ADJ

Glossary

Our local **beach**¹ is mainly **sandy**, with a few **rocks**² and **pebbles**³ down by the **shore**. There's a **steep cliff**⁴ rising above the beach, and children often play in the **caves**⁵ there. At the end of the **bay**⁶ there's a small **harbour**⁶. When the weather's bad, the **sailing boats**⁷ are **protected** from the **waves**⁸ and the **rough** sea. We often see large **ships**⁹ on the **horizon**¹⁰.



bay

coast the area of land that is close to or next to the sea or an ocean.

shore the land along the edge of the sea, a lake, etc.

steep A **steep** hill or **cliff** goes up quickly from a low place to a high one.

protect sb/sth from sth keep sb/sth safe from sth. **protection** N.

rough A **rough** sea has big waves. OPP **calm**.

6 Which words are being defined?

- a small stone you find on a beach pebble
- 1 the line between the land or the sea and the sky
- 2 a large piece of stone
- 3 an area of sand or small stones beside the sea
- 4 a high steep area of rock next to the sea
- 5 a large boat often used to carry passengers
- 6 the land at the edge of the sea where there is sand or rocks
- 7 a place where ships or boats are tied up and protected from the sea
- 8 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground
- 9 the area of land next to the sea
- 10 an area of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve

7 Complete the sentences.

- It was a nice day, so we went to the beach .
- 1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very
- 2 A huge hit the boat and we capsized.
- 3 The harbour the little boats in bad weather.
- 4 At one end of the beach there are rocks and pebbles, but the other end is
- 5 You can't climb the cliff; it's too
- 6 I could see a boat the horizon.

8 Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the picture. What are the words?

13 I can describe the climate

Do Units 11 and 12 first

A The weather

Word/Phrase	Example	Meaning
pour (with rain)	It's pouring outside!	rain heavily.
soaking wet SYN soaked	It was pouring with rain and I got soaking wet .	extremely wet.
drizzle v, n	It was drizzling when I left the office.	rain lightly, with very small drops .
rainbow	Did you see the rainbow ?	
bitterly cold	It's bitterly cold today.	extremely cold.
chilly	It gets chilly in the evening.	a little too cold to be comfortable.
mild	It's been a very mild winter.	warmer than usual for the time of year.
heatwave	I hate this heatwave !	a period of unusually hot weather.
muggy SYN humid	It's really muggy today.	warm and damp in an unpleasant way.
mist n misty adj	You get a lot of mist in the mornings in autumn.	thin cloud near the ground which is difficult to see through (not as thick as fog).
frost n frosty adj	There was a frost last night; there's ice on the car.	the weather condition when the temperature is below 0°C and ice forms on windows, the ground, etc.
breeze n breezy adj	It's hot today, but there's a lovely breeze .	a light wind.
gale	There were gales last night.	a strong wind.

1 Tick (✓) the correct answer.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| ► Which is colder? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a chilly day | <input type="checkbox"/> a mild day |
| 1 Which is stronger? | <input type="checkbox"/> a gale | <input type="checkbox"/> a breeze |
| 2 Which is colder? | <input type="checkbox"/> a breezy morning | <input type="checkbox"/> a frosty morning |
| 3 Which is warmer? | <input type="checkbox"/> a muggy evening | <input type="checkbox"/> a chilly evening |
| 4 Which means more water? | <input type="checkbox"/> It poured for an hour. | <input type="checkbox"/> It drizzled for an hour. |
| 5 Which is harder to see through? | <input type="checkbox"/> fog | <input type="checkbox"/> mist |
| 6 Which means more water? | <input type="checkbox"/> I got wet. | <input type="checkbox"/> I got soaked. |

2 Complete the words in the texts.

While we were out, it suddenly started to ► **pour** with rain. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got (1) **s** wet. When the rain stopped, the sun came out and we could see a (2) **r**. It wasn't cold; in fact, it was quite a (3) **m** day for November.

She woke up. It was (4) **b** cold, and she noticed the (5) **f** on the windows. By midday, though, the temperature had gone up. As she left the house, she felt a few (6) **d** of rain on her head, then it (7) **d** for the rest of the day.

Last summer was unusually hot; we had a (8) **h** which lasted for several weeks, and it was incredibly (9) **m** and unpleasant at night.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words/phrases and examples in the table and look at the meanings. What are the words?

B Climate change

OUR ENVIRONMENT

Global warming is the **gradual** increase in the average temperature of **the earth's¹ atmosphere**, and is caused by **harmful gases**. Many **environmentalists** believe that most of this **pollution** is the result of **human** activities. Here are some of the **effects**:

- As the ice at the **poles²** **melts**, sea levels could **rise** by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more **extreme** and **unpredictable** weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because the **rainforests³** are **disappearing**.
- Famine** and **disease** will **spread**, and this will especially affect people in poor countries.



spotlight **effect** **n.**, **affect** **v.**

An **effect** is a change which is caused by **something**.

What are the **effects** of global warming?

To **affect** something means to make it change in a particular way.

*Climate change will **affect** all our lives (= will make our lives change).*

Glossary

climate	the normal weather conditions of a particular region.	human	connected with people.
(the) environment	the natural world; the air, land, and water in which people, plants, and animals live (an environmentalist is sb who studies the environment).	melt	If you heat ice, it melts : it changes from a solid to a liquid .
gradual	happening slowly over a long period of time. gradually ADV.	rise	increase; go higher. rise N. opp fall V. N.
the atmosphere	the gases around the earth, planets, etc.	extreme	much hotter, colder, or more violent than usual.
harmful	causing damage, injury, or illness. harm sth/sb v.	unpredictable	If sth is unpredictable , you can't say how it will change in the future. opp predictable . predict v.
gas	a substance like air, e.g. oxygen and hydrogen.	disappear	stop existing. syn vanish .
pollution	dirty and dangerous gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment. pollute v.	famine	A famine is when there is not enough food in a country.
		disease	illness in people, animals, or plants.
		spread	affect more and more people or things.

4 Complete the words.

- | | | |
|--|--|-----------------------------|
| ► h <u>u</u> man | 4 h <u>u</u> rmf <u>u</u> l | 8 l <u>u</u> qu <u>u</u> d |
| 1 pr <u>u</u> d <u>u</u> ct <u>u</u> ble | 5 atmo <u>u</u> re | 9 d <u>u</u> s <u>u</u> se |
| 2 dis <u>u</u> ear | 6 env <u>u</u> ro <u>u</u> m <u>u</u> nt | 10 cl <u>u</u> m <u>u</u> t |
| 3 f <u>u</u> m <u>u</u> n <u>u</u> e | 7 p <u>u</u> ll <u>u</u> t <u>u</u> n | |

5 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- This gas won't harm anyone. **G**
- 1 Some kinds of animals are vanishing.
 - 2 The flood water is falling.
 - 3 Famine is spreading.
 - 4 This liquid is harmful.
 - 5 The weather is less extreme.
 - 6 The earth's temperature is rising.
 - 7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting.
 - 8 The river is polluted.

6 Circle the correct word.

- Ice is a solid/liquid.
- 1 How does the situation effect/affect you?
 - 2 It's all very predictable/unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.
 - 3 My brother studies the environment/an environmentalist.
 - 4 Global warming is caused by people/human activity.
 - 5 Eat your ice cream quickly – it's spreading/melting.
 - 6 Water is a liquid/gas.
 - 7 The rainforest is gradually disappearing/melting.
 - 8 There are harmful gases in the atmosphere/effect.

7 Complete the sentences.

- The earth is gradually getting warmer.
- 1 We had a lot of extreme weather last year: a long heatwave and gales in the autumn. I think it's all part of climate change.
 - 2 If you freeze water, it changes from a liquid to a solid.
 - 3 The beach was polluted with oil, which seriously affected the sea birds and animals.
 - 4 Environmentalists warn that there will be a rise in sea levels in the future.
 - 5 With global warming, some kinds of plants and animals are disappearing very fast.
 - 6 Certain diseases spread from person to person very quickly.
 - 7 Pollution has a very huge effect on the environment.
 - 8 After many months without rain, there is a real danger of desert in this part of Africa.

8 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How worried are you about global warming?

- 2 Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them?

- 3 Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how?

- 4 Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most?

- 5 What kind of pollution is common in your country?

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

14 I can describe natural disasters

A Types of disaster



Hurricane¹: this word is used especially of storms in the western Atlantic. It is a **violent** storm with very strong winds. In other parts of the world, especially Asia, it is called a **typhoon**.

Earthquake²: a **sudden** violent movement of the **ground** causing **damage**.

Tidal wave³: a very large ocean wave that is caused by a storm or

earthquake, and which **destroys** things when it reaches land.

Volcanic eruption⁴: a **volcano** is a mountain with a hole in the top, and when it **erupts**, hot gases and **lava** are forced out into the air and onto the **surrounding** land.

Drought⁵: a long period with no rain. **Crops** die, and people may **starve to death**.

Glossary

disaster a very bad event, causing harm or death.

violent very strong and usually causing damage. **violence** N.

sudden happening very quickly. **suddenly** ADV.

ground the top part of the earth's surface that people walk on.

damage harm or injury caused when sth is broken. **damage** v.

destroy sth break sth completely so it can't be used again. **destruction** N.

erupt explode and throw out fire, burning rocks, etc.

lava hot liquid rock (see picture).

surrounding that is near or around sth. **surroundings** N.

crops plants that are grown for food, e.g. rice and potatoes.

starve (to death) suffer (or die) because you don't have enough food.

1 Combine five more pairs of words from the box to form compound words or phrases.

earth ✓ volcanic tidal surrounding starve land
eruption violent wave quake ✓ to death storm

► earthquake

2 What nouns are formed from these adjectives and verbs?

► volcanic volcano
1 destroy

2 violent
3 erupt

4 surrounding
5 damage

3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.
- 1 During the hurricane, winds reached over 150 kph, and many homes were either completely destroyed or badly damaged. It was a terrible disaster for the island.
- 2 They expect a period of drought: the crops will die and people could starve to death.
- 3 The volcano erupted without warning and the ground was covered in red, hot lava.
- 4 There was a strong and violent storm. It was the beginning of the typhoon.

4 Test yourself. Cover the texts and look at the pictures. Can you name each disaster and what happens?

B Effects

EARTHQUAKE HITS KASHMIR

L ate last night a sudden earthquake struck the region of Kashmir on the borders of India and Pakistan, and hundreds of people are thought to have lost their lives as buildings collapsed while they slept.

Thousands have now been evacuated, but there are fears that many are still trapped inside their homes, so the death toll could rise. The damage has already been

considerable and the next 48 hours will be crucial, not only to rescue more people but also to try to maintain supplies of water and electricity.

Glossary

hit sth/sb	• make sudden violent contact with sth/sb. SYN strike sth/sb.
collapse	• If a building collapses, it falls to the ground. collapse N.
evacuate sb	• move sb away from a dangerous place. evacuation N.
fear	• a feeling that sth bad might happen. fear v.
trap sb	• If sb is trapped, they are inside sth and cannot get out.
death toll	• the number of people killed in a disaster, accident, etc.
considerable	• very large in size or amount.
crucial	• very important.
rescue sb	• take sb from a dangerous place to safety. SYN save sb.
maintain sth	• make sth continue at a certain level.
supply (PL supplies)	• an amount of sth that you need.

5 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

supply trap earthquake ✓ maintain strike/hit fear collapse evacuate rescue

When an ► earthquake (1) a city, there is always a danger that buildings will (2) and people will be (3) inside. As soon as the immediate danger has passed, the first job is to (4) people from the area, and (5) those in danger. At the same time, the government will send in (6) of food, water, and blankets to the disaster area. One of the hardest things of all is to (7) a supply of clean drinking water, and there is always the (8) that more people could die.

6 Replace the underlined words with a different word that has the same meaning.

- Many people are afraid that there will be more earthquakes. fear
- 1 Many buildings fell to the ground.
 - 2 It could be a very important decision.
 - 3 The villagers have all been moved from the village.
 - 4 There are people who are inside their homes and cannot get out.
 - 5 Scientists believe the hurricane will reach and attack Florida within 24 hours.
 - 6 The number of people killed could be as high as 2,000.
 - 7 The storm has done a great deal of damage.
 - 8 He was injured while trying to take his son to safety from the fire.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

15 I can describe animals and insects

A Creatures great and small: wild animals and insects



lion



elephant



gorilla



shark



tiger



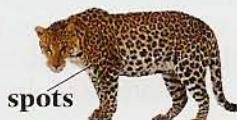
camel



bear



whale



leopard



monkey



snake



eagle



spider



fly



bee



mosquito

Glossary

creature a living thing such as an animal, bird, fish, or insect.

wild living in natural conditions; not looked after by people.

insect a small animal with six legs, one or two pairs of wings, and a body in three parts.

1 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

- | | | | | | |
|--------|----------|---|--------|---|-------|
| ► tier | tiger | 4 | grilla | 8 | sark |
| 1 | leopard | 5 | wale | 9 | money |
| 2 | elephant | 6 | sider | | |
| 3 | eale | 7 | nake | | |

2 Which creature:

- | | | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ► has wings? f | ly | , e | | , b | | |
| b | | , m | | | | |
| 1 | has a tail? l | | , e | | , l | |
| | t | | , c | | , m | |
| 2 | is an insect? f | | , b | | , m | |
| | | | | | | |
| 3 | has thick fur? g | | , b | | | |
| 4 | has a trunk? e | | | | | |
| 5 | has stripes? t | | | | | |
| 6 | has spots? l | | | | | |
| 7 | has a beak and feathers? e | | | | | |

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the creatures.

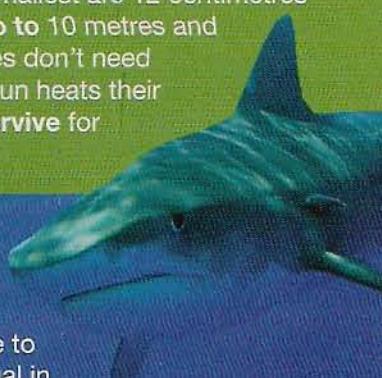
B Unusual facts about animals



Snakes

There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake.

About 400 are **poisonous**, but more are **harmless**. In size, they **vary** enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are **up to** 10 metres and **weigh** 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can **survive** for months without eating.



Sharks

The **average lifespan** of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no **bones** in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they **hunt**, but only a few **attack** humans: more people die from bee **stings** than from shark attacks.

Glossary

poisonous producing a dangerous substance (**poison**) that can kill or harm you.

harmless not causing damage, injury, or illness. OPP **harmful**. **harm** N, V.

vary (of a group) be different from each other.

up to used when saying the most an amount can be.

weigh have a certain **weight** N, which is how heavy sth is.

survive continue to live in a difficult situation. **survival** N.

average normal or typical.

lifespan the time that sth is likely to live (for people, we say **life expectancy**).

bone



hunt sth go after sth to catch and kill it.

attack sb/sth try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force. **attack** N.

sting a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin. **sting** V.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

► The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F

1 Most snakes are poisonous.

4 Snakes can be as heavy as 250 kilos.

2 Most sharks are harmless to humans.

5 Sharks have bones in their body.

3 Some snakes are longer than ten metres.

6 Sharks sting when they attack.

5 Answer the questions.

► Is **attack** a noun or a verb, or can it be both? both

1 What is the noun from the verb **survive**?

2 If animals have a **lifespan**, what do people have? Life

3 What is the noun from the verb **weigh**?

4 What is the adjective from **poison**?

5 What are the two adjectives from the noun **harm**? and

6 Complete the words in these animal facts.

► The average **lifespan** of most bees is 30 to 35 days.

1 Some snakes can **survive** for almost a year without food.

2 Nobody knows the **average** lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.

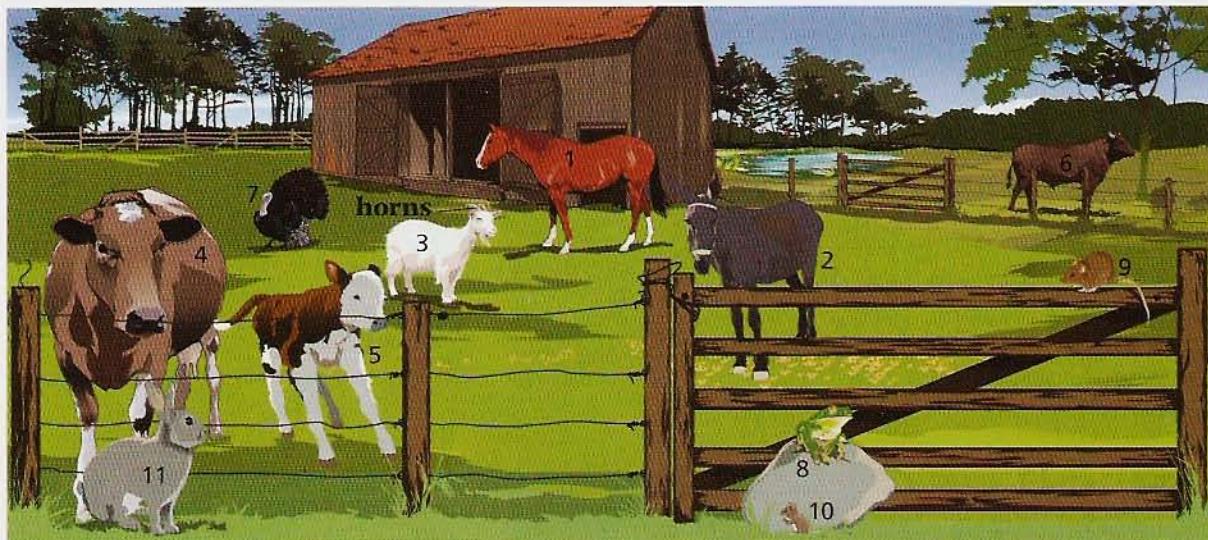
3 People **hunt** sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.

4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee or wasp **sting**.

5 Snakes can grow **up to** ten metres long.

6 The size of sharks can **vary** from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.

C Farm and small animals



1 horse
2 donkey

3 goat
4 cow

5 calf
6 bull

7 turkey
8 frog

9 rat
10 mouse (pl. mice)

11 rabbit

7 Complete the sentences.

► A goat often has two horns on its head.

1 A young cow is a

2 The plural of mouse is

3 Cows, sheep, and produce milk that people drink.

4 A is like a small horse with long ears.

5 A is like a mouse, but is larger.

6 A lives in or near water, and can jump.

7 A bull is the adult of the cow family.

8 A is a group of cows.

9 A is a large bird, similar to a chicken, that can be eaten.

10 The general word for bulls and cows on a farm is

spotlight cows and cattle

A **cow** is the **female** animal that is kept on farms to produce milk. The **male** is a **bull**. Cows and bulls kept as farm animals can be called **cattle**. A group of cows is called a **herd**.

8 Complete these animals' names.

► r a t

3 b l

6 m e

1 h e

4 c f

7 d y

2 g t

5 f g

8 t y

9 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions or ask another student.

1 Which of the animals on this page do people eat?

2 Do people keep these animals in your country? If so, why?

horses?

goats?

bulls?

donkeys?

mice?

10 Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.

Review: The world around us

Unit 11

1 Complete the questions and answers.

Space Quiz

- Q How long would a ► rocket take to (1) reach Mars?
A It would take (2) about 260 days.
- Q Is the (3) earth the only (4) planet in the solar (5) system where life (6) exists?
A Yes, most (7) scientists believe that to be true.
- Q Who (8) discovered the planet Venus?
A Most people think it was the ancient Greeks.
- Q Who (9) invented the first American rocket to go into (10) space?
A Robert Goddard, in the early twentieth century.
- Q What are 'Phobos' and 'Deimos'?
A They are two small moons or (11) satellites which (12) circle the planet Mars.
- Q How many stars are there in the (13) universe?
A Nobody knows for sure, but some say (14) there are ten thousand billion billion!

2 Complete the definitions.

- sun = the star that shines during the day
- 1 explore = go round a place in order to learn about it
 - 2 far-fetched = easy to believe
 - 3 revolve around something = go round something in a circle
 - 4 experiment = a scientific test in order to learn or find out about something
 - 5 scientist = a person who works in science or teaches science
 - 6 confirm = say or show that something is true or definite
 - 7 in other words: used for saying something in a different way
 - 8 invent = create something that didn't exist before

Unit 12

1 Circle the odd one out.

- boat (harbour) ship
- | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|--------|---------|-------|-------|---------|---------|------|
| 1 rock | wave | pebble | 3 float | sink | drown | 5 pond | flood | lake |
| 2 stream | river | puddle | 4 bank | ocean | shore | 6 steep | shallow | deep |

2 Complete the sentences.

- This river flows out to the sea.
- 1 The river is wide in some places but very narrow in others.
 - 2 Look! There's something floating on the surface of the water.
 - 3 They're building a harbour to provide shelter for the boats in bad weather.
 - 4 The boat sank in bad weather and one person nearly drowned.
 - 5 Looking out to sea, there were a couple of large ships on the horizon.
 - 6 It wasn't very nice on the boat because the sea was so rough.
 - 7 The canal is ten metres wide and the water is about two metres deep.
 - 8 We had to climb a steep cliff, which was very difficult.

3 One letter is wrong in each line. Cross out the word that is wrong and write the correct word at the end.

- When does the time come in this morning? tide _____
- 1 There are large socks on the beach. _____
 - 2 They travelled by chip. _____
 - 3 There's a sleep cliff by the shore. _____
 - 4 We have a number of fish in our pony. _____
 - 5 We saw some fishing boots. _____
 - 6 Look out! There's a big cave coming. _____
 - 7 It rained heavily and we had a floor. _____
 - 8 Why did the boat pink? _____
 - 9 The river blows down to the sea here. _____
 - 10 It's a very sandy peach. _____

Unit 13

1 Complete the sentences.

- Cars and factories are causing a lot of pollution _____
- 1 It's _____ with rain outside. The children will get very wet.
 - 2 What are the main _____ of global warming?
 - 3 It's usually cold in January, but this winter it has been very _____.
 - 4 Unfortunately, it's very hard to _____ the future: anything could happen.
 - 5 It was very hot, but fortunately there was a lovely _____ coming off the sea.
 - 6 Global warming is causing more _____ weather conditions, which will _____ people in different parts of the world in different ways.

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Pollution is damaging the air, land, and water in which we live. environment _____
- 1 Global warming will cause damage to the environment.
 - 2 If you heat ice, it changes from a solid to a liquid.
 - 3 With global warming, sea levels will get higher.
 - 4 Famine could affect more people in a larger area.
 - 5 These changes may happen slowly over a period of time.
 - 6 Some rainforests will no longer exist.

Unit 14

1 Match two sentences below with each of the natural disasters in the box.

hurricane earthquake ✓ tidal wave volcanic eruption drought

- Many buildings collapsed. earthquake _____
- 1 Hot gases came out of the top of the mountain. _____
 - 2 Winds reached 150 kph. _____
 - 3 There was a huge volume of water. _____
 - 4 We've had months without rain. _____
 - 5 There was a sudden violent movement of the ground. _____
 - 6 When it reached land, it destroyed everything along the beach. _____
 - 7 Lava covered the surrounding villages. _____
 - 8 People are starving to death. _____
 - 9 Many trees were destroyed in the storm. _____

2 Match 1–7 with a–h.

- There has been considerable f a in the early morning.
 1 The death _____ b more people.
 2 The school and several houses _____ c inside buildings.
 3 They rescued _____ d toll could rise.
 4 They need to maintain _____ e more will die.
 5 People are trapped _____ f damage. ✓
 6 The earthquake struck _____ g collapsed.
 7 People fear that _____ h supplies.

Unit 15

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

tiger✓ calf lion fly whale bee donkey gorilla shark leopard goat mosquito

Wild animals	Farm animals	Insects	Sea creatures
► tiger			
			XXXXXXXXXXXX
	XXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXXXX

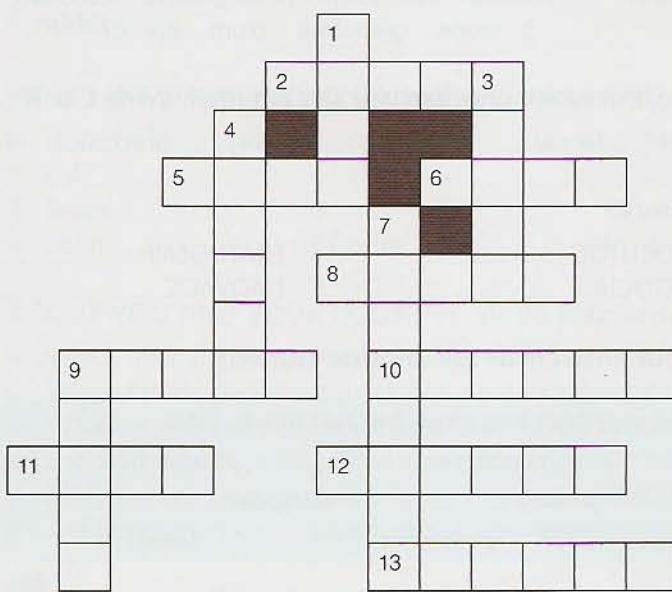
2 What is the connection between each creature on the left and a word on the right?

tigers ✓ snakes leopards elephants
 eagles bears bees goats

beak stripes ✓ trunk spots
 sting horns fur poisonous

► Tigers have stripes.

3 Complete the crossword.



ACROSS

2 birds have these



- 6 differ from each other
 8 large animal, lives in the desert
 9 bees can do this
 10 a very intelligent animal
 11 a young cow
 12 how heavy something is
 13 small creature with eight legs

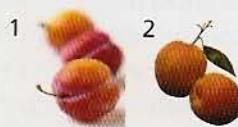
DOWN

- 1 plural of *mouse*
 3 long thin creature, moves along the ground
 4 you can die if you eat or drink this
 7 not causing injury or danger
 9 large sea creature, can be dangerous

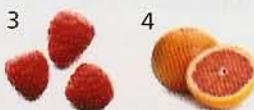
16 I can describe a range of food

A Fruit, vegetables, and herbs

- 1 plums
2 apricots



- 3 raspberries
4 grapefruits



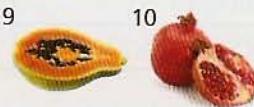
- 5 avocado
6 figs



- 7 coconut
8 passion fruits



- 9 papaya
10 pomegranates



- herbs:
1 parsley
2 mint



1 Circle the odd one out in each group.

- fig coconut parsley raspberry
1 leek papaya artichoke asparagus
2 spinach basil mint rosemary

- 3 celery asparagus beetroot thyme
4 fig sweetcorn pomegranate coconut
5 stone grapefruit plum apricot

2 These vegetables are usually cooked, but which ones can you also eat raw? Write C or R.

- spinach R artichoke R beetroot R fennel R chickpeas R celery R broccoli R

3 Find five more fruits from the letters.

- BARSERPY raspberry 2 NOCUTOC _____ 4 FRATUGERIP _____
1 MULP _____ 3 PRTOCIA _____ 5 DAOVAOC _____

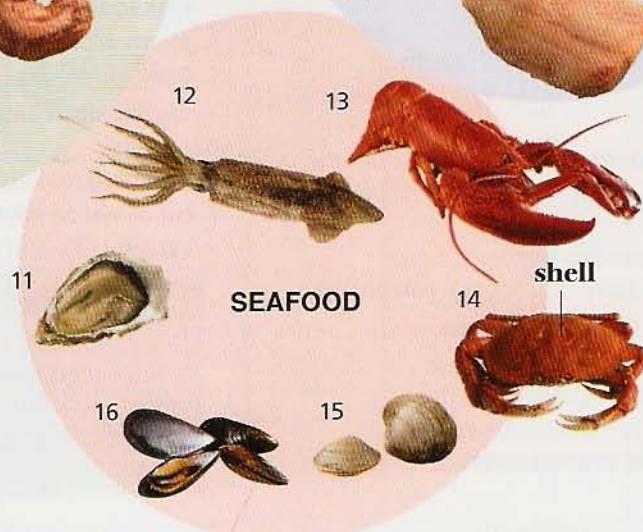
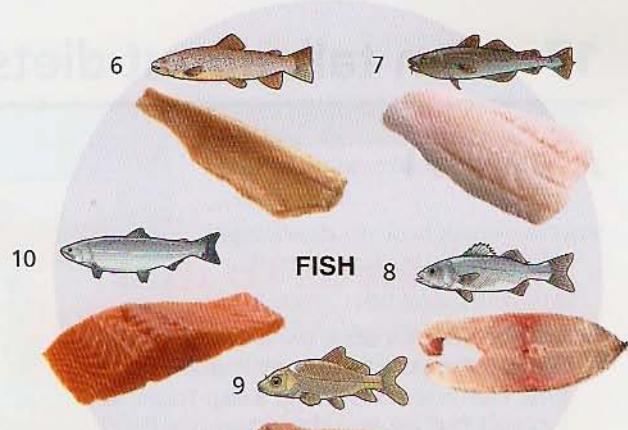
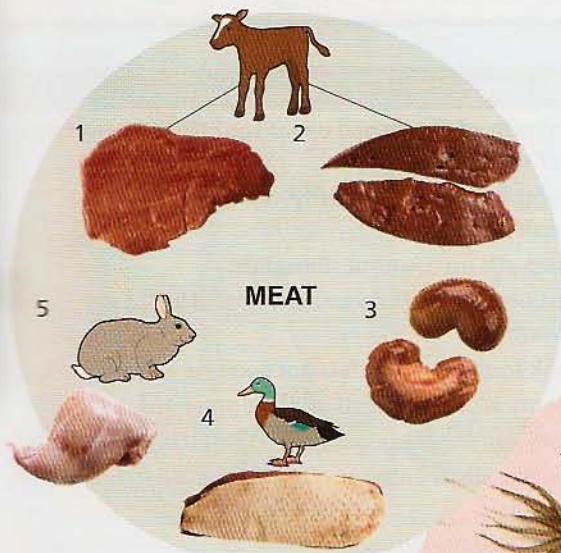
4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

Do people eat these things in your country? Yes. / Yes, but not much. / No.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-------------|---------------|
| papaya | coconut | raspberries | passion fruit |
| plums | basil | parsley | chickpeas |
| asparagus | artichoke | sweetcorn | fennel |

5 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Meat, fish, and seafood



- 1 **veal** (meat from a **calf**, which is a young cow)
 2 **calf's liver**
 3 **kidney**
 4 **duck**
 5 **rabbit**

- 6 **trout**
 7 **cod**
 8 **sea bass**
 9 **carp**
 10 **salmon**

- 11 **oyster**
 12 **squid**
 13 **lobster**
 14 **crab**
 15 **clams**
 16 **mussels**

6 What's the missing letter? Write the correct word.

- | | | | | | | | |
|-------|--------|---|-------|----|---------|----|--------|
| ► dck | duck | 4 | squid | 8 | live | 12 | salmon |
| 1 | caf | 5 | kiney | 9 | val | | |
| 2 | loster | 6 | trot | 10 | sea bas | | |
| 3 | abbit | 7 | oster | 11 | musels | | |

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which meat do people eat most: veal, rabbit, or duck?
- 2 Which fish do people eat most: cod, carp, or salmon?
- 3 Which seafood do people eat most: crab, clams, or mussels?
- 4 Are there any kinds of seafood above that you never eat? Why?
- 5 Are there any kinds of meat above that you never eat? Why?
- 6 Are there any kinds of fish above that you never eat? Why?

8 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you name the different types of meat, fish, and seafood?

17 I can talk about diets and cooking

A Diets

Who needs to diet?

I never go on a diet: it's a waste of time. Diets list all the food that is good for you, but few people can keep them up. I haven't put on weight in twenty years. Here's why:

- I eat almost anything I like, but I don't eat a lot. And I don't eat **junk food**.
- I drink **plenty of** water. It's better for you than **fizzy drinks**, and cheaper too.
- I avoid **snacks** between meals because most of them are **fattening**.
- I've **cut down on** the amount of food I eat in the evening.
- I get plenty of **exercise**.

Glossary

a waste of time a bad use of your time (also **a waste of money**).

good for you SYN **healthy**. OPP **bad for you / unhealthy**.

keep sth up continue doing sth.

put on weight become heavier and fatter. OPP **lose weight**.

junk food food which is not good for you (e.g. crisps).

plenty of sth as much of sth as you need.

fizzy drink a drink containing small bubbles of gas.

snack a small amount of food usually eaten between meals.

fattening making you fatter.

cut down on sth have less of sth.

exercise physical activity that keeps you healthy.

spotlight diet

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet** / **go on a diet**, which means eating less to lose weight.

1 Good for you or bad for you? Write G or B.

► healthy food G

1 junk food _____

2 fizzy drinks _____

3 plenty of water _____

4 fattening food _____

5 snacks between meals _____

6 a balanced diet _____

7 plenty of exercise _____

2 Complete the sentences.

► Eat it – it's good for you.

1 They're both going on a diet.

2 She's cut down on chocolate.

3 I tried to diet but couldn't keep it up.

4 That diet was a waste of time.

5 He's put on a lot of weight.

6 We've got plenty of orange juice.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

► You shouldn't eat much cream and cheese: they're fattening.

1 You should drink plenty of water: about 6 to 8 glasses a day.

2 You should get plenty of exercise. One good way is going to the gym.

3 It's difficult to cut down on the amount of salt you eat.

4 Doing lots of exercise is better than going on a diet.

5 I think diets are a waste of time and money.

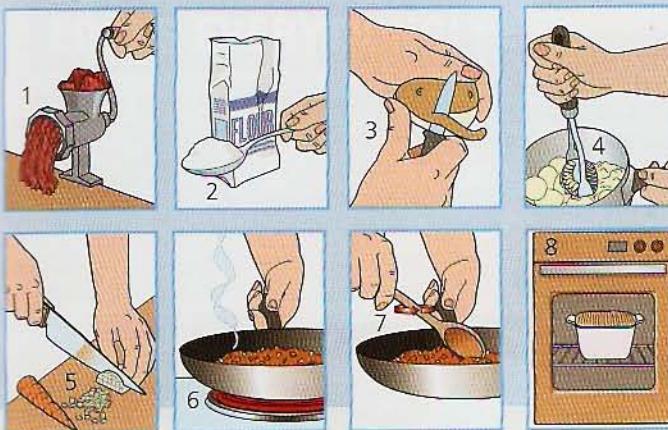
6 The problem with diets is that most people can't keep them up.

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write Yes or No.

B Cooking

Recipe for Cottage Pie



Ingredients

300 g **minced**¹ beef
 300 g potatoes
 1 large onion
 1 carrot
 2–3 chopped tomatoes
 300 ml beef **stock**
 1 tablespoon of **flour**²
 butter, salt, and pepper

Peel³ the potatoes and **boil** until just cooked. Then **mash**⁴ them with butter. **Chop**⁵ the onion and carrot. **Fry**⁶ the meat and vegetables quickly, then **stir**⁷ in the flour and cook for one minute. **Add** the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Then put it in a large **dish**, cover with the mashed potato and some butter, and **bake** in a hot **oven**⁸ for 30 minutes.

Glossary

recipe a set of instructions for cooking sth.

ingredients the food items you need to have to make sth to eat.

stock water with added flavour of meat, fish, or vegetables.

boil sth cook sth in water, usually in a **saucepan**.



fry sth cook sth in oil, usually in a **frying pan**.



add sth put sth together with sth else.

dish a container for serving food at the table (it is larger than a plate).

bake sth cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = **roast**).

5 Which word is being defined?

- Use a special machine to cut meat into very small pieces mince
- 1 Remove the skin _____
- 2 Cut into many pieces _____
- 3 Put something with another thing _____
- 4 Press and mix until soft and smooth _____
- 5 Cook in water _____
- 6 Cook in oil _____
- 7 Cook in the oven without oil or fat _____
- 8 Cook in the oven with oil or fat _____

6 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Boil the carrots in that saucepan _____.
- 1 I've got a good r _____ for spaghetti Bolognese, so we just need to buy the i _____.
- 2 A _____ the meat to the vegetables and fry it for about 10 minutes.
- 3 The frying p _____ is fine, but I need a larger d _____ to serve the meat on.
- 4 You have to b _____ the cake in the o _____ for about 40 minutes.
- 5 If you add some f _____, it will make the sauce thicker.
- 6 Add the s _____, then s _____ the rice continuously while it cooks.

7 Test yourself. Cover the text and say what you can see in the pictures. Then look at the food but cover the cooking instructions. How do you make Cottage Pie?

18 I can talk about money

A Buying things



A phone costs €120. You **can't afford** it, but there's a **scratch** on it, so you ask the shop assistant for a **discount**.

They agree to take €20 **off**, so you buy it and get a **receipt**.

Next day, there's a problem with it, so you take it back and ask for a **refund**.

They refuse, so you wait for **the sales**.

Then, it is **reduced to** €80 – a **bargain**.

You buy it and pay cash. You give them €100 and they give you €20 **change**.

1 Complete the sentences.

- If something costs €10 less than usual, it has €10 **off**.
- 1 If you don't have enough money to buy something, then you can't **afford** it.
- 2 If you ask to pay less than the normal price, you are asking for a **discount**.
- 3 If the normal price is €60 and the shop sells it for €50, then it has been **reduced** by €10.
- 4 The time when shops sell goods more cheaply than normal is called the **sales**.
- 5 If you buy something which is a good price for the product, you can say it's a **bargain**.
- 6 If you pay with €50 for something that costs €30, you should get €20 **change**.
- 7 When you have paid, the shop assistant should give you a **receipt**.
- 8 If you want your money back on a product, you can ask for a **refund**.

2 Complete the questions in the questionnaire.

- Do you keep the **receipt** when you've bought something?
- 1 When you go shopping, do you always look for a **bargain**?
- 2 If you saw a product in a shop that had a **scratch** on it, would you ask the shop assistant to take money off it?
- 3 Do you always check your **change** when you pay?
- 4 Do you often wait and buy things in the **sales**? If so, what things?
- 5 Do you often take things back and ask for a **refund**?

3 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

Glossary

- afford sth** If you **can afford sth** you have enough money to pay for it.
- scratch** a mark on the surface of sth made by a sharp object (*see picture*).
- discount** a cut in the usual price of something. **SYN reduction**.
- off** If sth has €20 **off**, it costs €20 less than usual.
- receipt** a piece of paper that shows that sth has been paid for.
- refund** an amount of money paid back to you when you return sth to a shop.
- the sales** a time when shops sell things at a lower price.
- reduce sth** make sth less in size, quantity, or price. **reduction** **N.**
- bargain** sth that is a good price or is cheaper than usual.
- change** If sth costs €2 and you give the assistant €5, you get €3 **change**.

ABOUT YOU

I often lose it.

B I'm not very good with money

LOTTERY WINNER LOSES EVERYTHING!

Maria Costas was an ordinary working mum without much **income** until she won over €3m on the lottery and became a very **wealthy** woman. She immediately bought a house **worth** €1m, a car that **cost a fortune**, and jewellery **valued** at €250,000. Unfortunately, the house was a **waste of money**. She **owned** it for six months, never lived there, then had to sell it for much less than she paid for it. Maria also wasted **huge amounts** of money on designer clothes and foreign holidays, and within eighteen months she was completely **broke**. Now she **owes** the bank over €5,000, and has credit card **debts** as well.

Glossary

income	the money you earn from work, plus any other money you receive.
wealthy	rich. SYN well off .
worth	If a flat is worth €3m, you could sell it for €3m (that is the value).
cost a fortune	be very expensive.
value sth at sth	decide what sth is worth, or what you could sell it for.
waste of money	a bad use of money.
own sth	If you own sth , it is yours; it belongs to you.
huge	very large. SYN massive .
amount	a quantity of sth; a sum of money.
broke	INF having no money.
owe sb sth	have to pay money to sb for sth they have done or given.
debt	an amount of money that you owe sb.

4 Cover the text. Answer the questions.

- How did Maria become wealthy?
- 1 How much was her new house worth?
- 2 What was her jewellery valued at?
- 3 How long did she own her new house?
- 4 Why was the house a waste of money?
- 5 How much does she owe the bank?
- 6 Does she have any other debts?

She won the lottery.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals.

- My boss has a lot of money. **WEALTHY** My boss is very wealthy.
- 1 It's a very large house. **HUGE**
- 2 The house is worth £2,000,000. **VALUE**
- 3 Rani hasn't got any money. **BROKE**
- 4 The flat doesn't belong to me. **OWN**
- 5 Her shoes were very expensive. **FORTUNE**
- 6 Gisela has debts of €5,000. **OWE**

6 Complete the sentences.

- The watch went wrong after two months; it was a **waste** of money.
- 1 My uncle won a huge **amount** of money, so he's very **well off** now.
- 2 I haven't got any money; I'm completely **broke**.
- 3 It's a nice flat, but it isn't **worth** half a million euros.
- 4 It's an absolutely **huge** school: there are about 2,500 students.
- 5 He's got a day job and an evening job, so he has a good **income**.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

19 I can talk about sleep

A Before, during, and after sleep

BEFORE: You feel **sleepy**, start **yawning**¹, and decide to go to bed. You might put on **pyjamas**² or a **nightie**³, perhaps **set the alarm**⁴, and then get into bed. Soon, if you're lucky, you **fall asleep**.

DURING: When you're **asleep**, you have **dreams**⁵ and possibly **nightmares**. Some people **snore**⁶; at this point they're **fast asleep**.

AFTER: 7.30 a.m. The alarm **goes off**. It might **wake you up**, or you might be **wide awake** already. People without an alarm might **oversleep**, others might decide to **have a lie-in**.

Glossary

sleepy tired and ready to go to sleep.

fall asleep start sleeping. SYN **go to sleep**.

asleep sleeping.

nightmare a bad dream.

fast asleep sleeping deeply. SYN **in a deep sleep**.

OPP **wide awake**.

go off ring or make a noise.

wake sb up make sb stop sleeping.

oversleep sleep longer than you should or want.

have a lie-in INF stay in bed later than usual.



1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with words or phrases with the same meaning.

I felt ► tired, so I went to bed quite early last night. I went to sleep without a problem and very soon I was in a deep sleep. Unfortunately, in the middle of the night, I had a bad dream which woke me up. After that, I was awake for ages and didn't fall asleep again until about half past four, so when the alarm rang just after seven, I didn't hear it and I carried on sleeping. When I finally woke up, I felt terrible.

► sleepy

1

2

3

4

5

6

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 Barry's still in bed and he's fast ► asleep . Do you want me to him up?
- 2 I felt really , so I went to bed.
- 3 I forgot to my alarm last night, and I'm afraid I this morning.
- 4 I don't have to get up early tomorrow, so I think I'll have a
- 5 It was after midnight but I still felt wide
- 6 I felt really tired – I couldn't stop
- 7 My husband wears red in bed and so loudly that he keeps me awake.

3 Test yourself. Cover the text above. Say what you can see in the pictures.

B Sleep habits

ABOUT YOU

Antonio: 'I **sleep like a log** wherever I am.'

Ella: 'If I eat late, I often **have a restless night**.'

Hiroko: 'I need a good night's sleep, otherwise I can't **concentrate** the next day.'

Raul: '**Lack of sleep** makes me really **irritable**.'

Suzanna: 'I often have nightmares and wake up feeling **exhausted**.'

Carla: 'I've always been a **heavy sleeper** – nothing **disturbs** me.'

Nick: 'I **suffer from insomnia**, so I never get much sleep.'

Agnieszka: 'During the day, I often **have a nap**.'

Omar: 'When there are things **on my mind** – like exams – I sleep really badly.'

Glossary

habit a thing you do often, almost without thinking.

sleep like a log sleep very well. OPP **sleep badly**.

have a restless night be unable to sleep well and often wake up.

concentrate (on sth) give all your attention to sth.

lack of sth a situation in which you don't have enough of sth (e.g. money, food, or sleep).

irritable becoming angry easily.

exhausted extremely tired, physically or mentally.

a heavy sleeper a person who doesn't wake up easily. OPP **a light sleeper**.

disturb sb do sth to stop sb who is trying to sleep, work, etc.

suffer from sth have the experience of sth unpleasant.

insomnia If you suffer from **insomnia**, you are often unable to sleep.

have a nap have a short sleep, e.g. for half an hour.

on my mind If sth is **on your mind**, you're thinking or worrying about it.

4 Find six more phrases in the box.

concentrate ✓ have like a log insomnia have a restless sleep a nap
a heavy on something ✓ on night suffer from sleeper my mind

► concentrate on something

5 Complete the sentences with suitable words or phrases.

► I get very irritable if I don't sleep well.

1 These days I often have a after lunch; it's almost become a .

2 After a relaxing bath and a hot drink, I always sleep .

3 I never sleep more than three hours a night – I insomnia.

4 I had too much to eat and drink last night, and I had a very night.

5 I didn't sleep well last night because I've got a lot of things on my .

6 Nothing me at night – I'm a very sleeper.

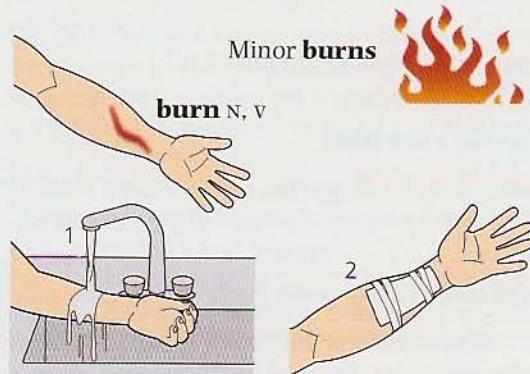
7 I was absolutely last night and I slept for ten hours.

8 I'm afraid I'm a bit irritable at the moment. I'm suffering from a of sleep.

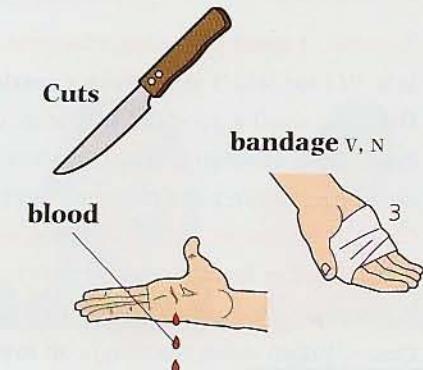
6 ABOUT YOU Read the statements at the top of the page again. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student.

20 I can talk about injuries

A Burns and cuts



Hold the affected area under **running water**¹ for 15 minutes. **Cover** it with a dry, clean **dressing**² to **prevent infection**. If **symptoms** of infection **develop**, see your doctor.



Wash and dry your hands **thoroughly**. Clean the **wound** under running water. Dry the area, and put a dressing over it **temporarily** while you clean the skin around the wound. Cover the cut completely with a dressing, or **bandage**³ it. It should **heal up** in a few days.

Glossary

cover sth	• put sth over sth, especially to protect it.
prevent sth	• stop sth from happening. prevention N.
infection	• an illness caused by bacteria or a virus.
symptom	• a change in your body which is a sign of illness.
develop	• grow or increase.
thoroughly	• in a very careful and complete way.
wound	• an area of damage to part of your body (especially a cut).
temporarily	• for a short time only.
heal OR heal up	• become healthy again.

1 Complete the words.

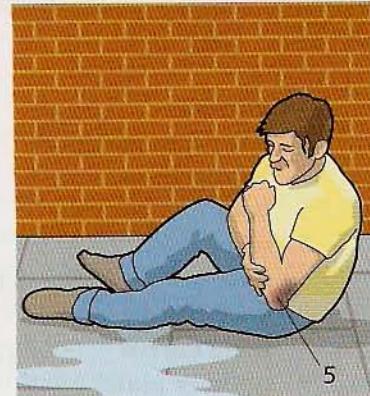
► p r e v e n t	3 t h _ r _ _ g h l _	6 s _ m p t _ m
1 i n f _ _ _ _ _ i o n	4 w _ _ n d	7 t _ _ p o r _ r _ l y
2 b _ n d _ g e	5 b l _ _ d	8 d _ v _ l _ p

2 Complete the texts.

I was cooking last weekend and picked up a hot pan and ► **burnt** myself. It was really painful. I held the (1) b_____ under (2) r_____ water for fifteen minutes, then I (3) c_____ it with a dressing. I made sure it was clean because you have to (4) p_____ infection. Since then, it's got a lot better and I haven't had any (5) s_____ of infection. I cut my hand yesterday. I cleaned the (6) w_____ under running water, then covered it (7) t_____ with a (8) d_____ , and washed the skin around it. I couldn't find a (9) b_____ , so I went to the chemist's for one. I probably didn't clean the wound (10) t_____ enough, as it hasn't (11) h_____ very well, and I think I've got an (12) i_____ .

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B A nasty injury



The other day I **slipped**¹ and fell **backwards** and **banged** my **elbow**² on the ground.

I started to feel **dizzy**³ and then I **fainted**⁴. I was **unconscious** for a minute or so.

When I **came round**, my arm was very painful. It was quite **swollen** and **bruised**⁵, but it wasn't **bleeding**. I realized it was a serious **injury**, so I went to hospital.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you come round, you are conscious. T
- 1 If you bang your head, it always bleeds.
- 2 If you faint, you become unconscious.
- 3 If you lose blood, you always faint.
- 4 A bruised knee looks blue.
- 5 A nasty burn is a serious burn.
- 6 If you slip, you can easily fall.
- 7 Your elbow is at the end of your arm.
- 8 A swollen finger is bigger than usual.
- 9 Feeling dizzy is very painful.
- 10 Backwards is the opposite of forwards.

Glossary

nasty very bad or unpleasant.

injury an area of damage done to sb's body, especially in an accident. **injure** v.

backward(s) in the direction behind you. opp **forward(s)**.

bang sth hit a part of your body against sth when you are moving.

dizzy feeling as if everything is turning around and you might fall.

unconscious in a state like sleep, often caused by an injury. opp **conscious**.

come round become conscious again. opps **faint**, **pass out**.

swollen larger than usual because of an injury.

bleed lose blood from your body.

5 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

- The ball hit him next to his eye; his eye was quite the next day. **bruised**
- 1 I on the ice and fell over.
- 2 I know he slipped, but did he fall or forwards?
- 3 He fainted, and when he came he didn't know where he was.
- 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident.
- 5 She her head on the door and fell to the floor.
- 6 My finger was so I put a dressing on it.

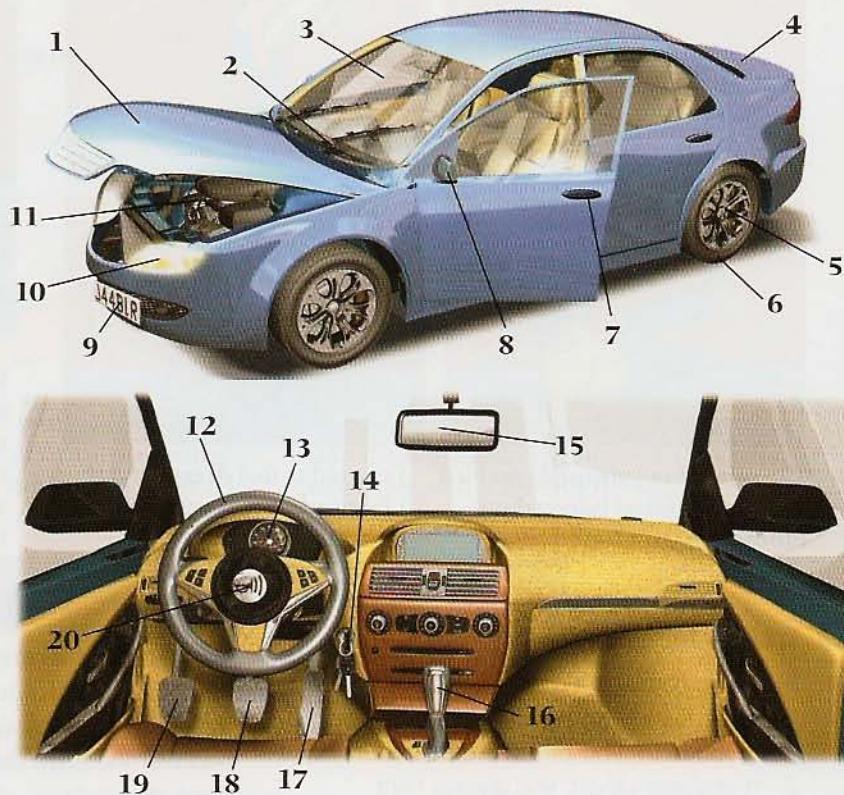
6 ABOUT YOU Which of the following have you done or experienced? Tick them.

- 1 had a swollen eye.
- 2 fainted in a public place.
- 3 had a serious injury.
- 4 slipped and fallen into a river.
- 5 had a nasty burn on your arm.
- 6 lost quite a lot of blood in an accident.

21 I can talk about cars and driving

A The car

- 1 **bonnet**
- 2 **windscreen wiper**
- 3 **windscreen**
- 4 **boot**
- 5 **wheel**
- 6 **tyre**
- 7 **door handle**
- 8 **wing mirror**
- 9 **number plate**
- 10 **headlights**
- 11 **engine**
- 12 **steering wheel**
- 13 **speedometer**
- 14 **ignition**
- 15 **rear-view mirror**
- 16 **gear stick/lever**
- 17 **accelerator**
- 18 **brake**
- 19 **clutch**
- 20 **horn**



- 1 Combine words from the box to form six more compound words.

rear-view ✓ steering door windscreen lever mirror number
wing gear wheel mirror ✓ wiper handle plate

► rear-view mirror

- 2 Outside the car or inside the car?

Write O or I.

- clutch I
- 1 tyre
- 2 speedometer
- 3 steering wheel
- 4 headlight
- 5 brake
- 6 rear-view mirror
- 7 wheel
- 8 horn
- 9 windscreen wiper

- 3 Complete the sentences.

If you want to ...

- start the car, turn on the ignition.
- 1 stop, put your foot on the .
- 2 change gear, put your foot on the .
- 3 go faster, put your foot on the .
- 4 store luggage, open the .
- 5 look at the engine, open the .
- 6 see at night, turn on the .
- 7 turn a corner, look in your .
- 8 drive in the rain, turn on the .
- 9 warn someone, press your .

- 4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. How many things can you name?

B Driving tips

TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always **be prepared for** bad road conditions and bad drivers.
- On wet roads, **brake, steer, and accelerate** gently to avoid **skidding**.
- **Watch out** for motorcyclists and cyclists; give them plenty of space when **overtaking**.
- In car parks, **reverse** into a parking space **rather than** drive into it.
- **Keep** to the **speed limit** and don't drive too **close to** the vehicle in front.

Glossary

tip	▪ a piece of practical advice.
be prepared for sth	▪ be ready and able to deal with any problems. prepare v.
brake	▪ go more slowly or stop a vehicle by using the brakes.
steer	▪ control the direction a vehicle is moving in.
accelerate	▪ go faster. opp slow down .
skid	▪ suddenly move sideways without control.
watch out	▪ be careful because there is a possible danger.
overtake sb/sth	▪ go past sb/sth that is going more slowly.
reverse	▪ go backwards in a car.
rather than	▪ instead of; in place of.
speed limit	▪ the highest legal speed at which you can drive on a road.
close to sth	▪ near sth.

spotlight *keep*

Keep often means 'continue or stay in a particular place or condition'.

Keep to the speed limit. (Stay below the speed limit.)

Keep left. (Stay on the left.)

5 Cover the glossary, then complete the meanings.

► **brake** = stop a vehicle

1 **overtake** = go another car

2 **accelerate** = go

3 **reverse** = go

4 **tip** = a piece of

5 **steer** = control the of the vehicle

6 **rather than** = of

6 Complete the sentences.

► You shouldn't **overtake** on a bridge.

1 The weather was awful and I wasn't really for it.

2 I never go over the speed , or drive too to the cars in front.

3 He crashed into the tree after he on the wet road.

4 There's a school on the corner, so out for small children.

5 Do you always to the speed limit?

6 I parked in the street than the car park because it's free.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are these useful tips, or did you know them already? _____
- 2 Do you usually brake and accelerate gently? _____
- 3 Do you usually reverse into parking spaces in a car park? Why/Why not? _____
- 4 Are there times when you don't keep to the speed limit? _____
- 5 Do you know what to do if your car skids? _____
- 6 What do you do to prepare for bad winter weather? _____

8 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

22 I can describe travel problems and accidents

A Trains and planes

'We had **trouble** getting to the airport because we **got held up** in traffic.'

'I wanted to leave at 8.30, but my **day return** was only **valid** after 9.30.'

'The train was **due** at 9.42 but it didn't **get in** until 10.25.'

'I was late because they **cancelled** my train without **warning**.'

'The flight from Heathrow was delayed, so I missed my **connecting flight** to Palermo.'

'My brother was **meant to pick me up** at the airport, but he didn't **turn up**.'

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- I got my connecting flight. G
- 1 The train was cancelled.
- 2 The train's due in a minute.
- 3 They didn't turn up.

Glossary

trouble (doing sth/with sth) a situation that causes a problem.

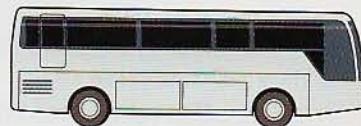
get/be held up If you **get held up** or are **held up**, sth has caused you to be late. **syn be delayed**.

day return a ticket to travel to a place and back again on the same day.

valid acceptable and able to be used.

due expected to arrive or happen.

get in (usually of a train or **coach** *see picture*) arrive.



cancel sth decide that sth that has been planned will not happen.

warning information that sth bad may happen.

connecting flight a flight that leaves soon after another one arrives.

meant to do sth If sb is or was **meant to do sth**, they have been asked to do it.

pick sb/sth up go to a place and collect sb/sth (usually in a car).

turn up arrive or appear (often used in the negative).

2 Complete the sentences.

- My husband was meant to meet me, but he didn't turn up.
- 1 They've just said the train is in five minutes, so that's good.
- 2 The plane to Madrid was late, so I missed my flight to Malaga.
- 3 We had a lot of at the border: we were for two hours.
- 4 Passengers arrived late because the train company two trains this morning.
- 5 I was to meet them at the station, but I got up in the traffic.
- 6 What time does your train in?
- 7 He's gone to the airport to them up.
- 8 There was no that trains might be cancelled.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

- 1 Do most trains get in on time, or are they often delayed? If delayed, why?
- 2 When did you last miss a train or plane? Why, and what happened?

B On the roads

Hi Sammy

We've just got back from a little **trip** to Spain. We stayed **overnight** in Malaga, then **hired a car** and drove up to Seville, **stopping off** at Osuna **on the way**. We loved Seville – you really must go there. We also went down to Cadiz, **via** Jerez, but the journey was a **nightmare**! We **got stuck** in a **traffic jam** for hours, and when we finally **ended up** **on the outskirts** of Cadiz, there was more **heavy traffic** because of **the rush hour**. Still, it was nice when we got there. We went to ...

spotlight **way**

The **way** is the route or direction that you need to take to get somewhere.

*Is this the **way** to the bank? I went **the wrong way** and got lost. We stopped **on the way** to Scotland. I saw him **on my way** to school.*

Glossary

- trip** a journey to a place and back again, for business or pleasure, often for a short period of time (e.g. a **day trip**, a **business trip**).
overnight for one night.
hire a car pay to use a car for a short time. SYN **rent a car**.
stop off stop during a journey to do sth.
via going through a place (to get to another place).
nightmare INF an experience that is very unpleasant.
get/be stuck be unable to move easily.
traffic jam a long line of cars moving very slowly.
end up find yourself in a place or situation you didn't plan.
the outskirts (PL N) The outer part of a town or city is called **the outskirts**.
heavy traffic a lot of cars on the road at a particular time.
the rush hour the time when a lot of people are travelling to and from work.

4 Match words on the left with words on the right to make eight more words or phrases.

heavy ✓ rush hire traffic
the wrong stop get end on

off way traffic ✓ stuck up
a car hour the way jam

► heavy traffic

5 Complete the definitions.

- The outer part of a town or city is the outskirts.
1 A journey to a place and then back again is a
2 A long line of cars moving slowly is a
3 If you stay somewhere for one night, you stay
4 To pay to use a car for a short time is to it.
5 A very unpleasant experience is a It also means 'a bad dream'.
6 If you go through Birmingham to get to London, you go Birmingham.

6 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 Have you or your family ever a car? If so, when and why?
- 2 On long journeys, do you want to get from A to B as quickly as possible, or do you like to off somewhere on the ?
- 3 Do you often get in traffic?
- 4 Do you ever go on day ? If so, where to?

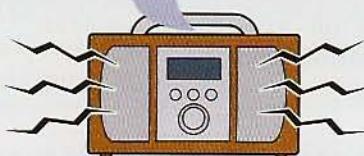
7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

C A road accident

Here is the latest travel news ...

There's been a **serious accident** on the M3 outside Winchester. It **occurred** just after 7.00 a.m., when a **van** skidded on the wet road and **collided with** other **vehicles**. The accident has **blocked** two **lanes** of the motorway. **Emergency services** are at the scene of the accident, and motorists are being advised to **avoid** the area.

And on the M23 at Junction 9 near Gatwick, an **ambulance** has **broken down** while taking an **injured** driver to hospital. This is causing delays for traffic on the way to the airport ...



Glossary

serious accident

• a bad or dangerous accident.

occur FML

• happen, especially in a way that has not been planned.

van



skid

• suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control.

collide with sth

• hit sth very hard while moving.
SYN **crash into sth**.

vehicle

• FML e.g. a car, bike, bus, or lorry.

block a road, etc.

• make it difficult for anything to pass.

lane

• a part of a wide road marked by painted white lines.

emergency services

• the police, ambulance, and fire services.

avoid sb/sth

• stay away from sb/sth.

ambulance



break down

• (of a vehicle) stop working.

injured

• hurt physically.

8 One letter is missing. Write the words correctly.

► injurd injured

3 serius serious

6 bloc block

1 amb lance ambulance

4 emegency emergency

7 avid avoid

2 veicle vehicle

5 occur occurred

8 colide collide

9 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

► Was it a bad accident? serious

1 Fortunately the driver wasn't hurt.

2 There are too many cars, vans, and lorries on the road.

3 The van crashed into another car.

4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road.

5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes.

6 The accident happened late last night.

10 Complete the sentences.

► The car was hit by a big van.

1 We couldn't get by because there was a fallen tree across the road.

2 I think the driver must have skidded on the ice.

3 There was a serious accident last week when a woman was nearly killed.

4 You should move into the outside lane to overtake another car.

5 The car breaked down on the way to the airport and I had to ring for help.

6 Several people were injured, and they were taken to hospital.

11

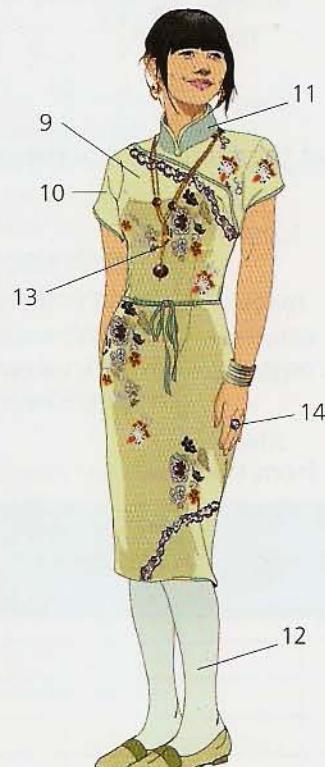
Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

23 I can talk about clothes and fashion

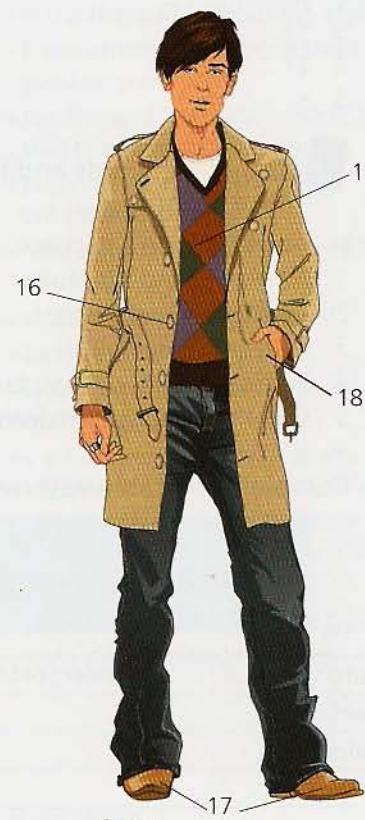
A Clothes



Amy



Beth



Gavin

- 1 cap
- 2 cotton blouse/shirt
- 3 belt
- 4 waistcoat
- 5 denim skirt
- 6 high-heeled leather boots
- 7 earrings
- 8 bracelet

- 9 silk dress
- 10 short sleeves
- 11 collar
- 12 tights
- 13 necklace
- 14 ring

- 15 V-neck sweater
- 16 button
- 17 suede shoes
- 18 pocket

spotlight *jewellery and material*

Necklace, bracelet, ring, and earrings are all examples of **jewellery**. Cotton and silk are types of **material**. SYN **fabric**.

Leather and suede are **materials** made from animal skin.



Underwear: 1 bra

2 knickers

3 slip

4 underpants 5 vest

Three golden rules for fashion

Fashion expert Alyson Walsh says that every **stylish** woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a timeless collection of clothes for every occasion. This includes: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, knee-length skirt, etc. Being **stylish** is about what **suits** you and your **figure**. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the basics (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about **fashionable** clothes – you probably won't wear them after one season.
- Choose **neutral** colours: black, cream, white, and dark blue. Neutrals look **elegant**, and are **versatile** and easy to **match**. Just think of Armani fashions, year after year.
- A simple **outfit** can be **transformed** with the **latest** fashion **accessory**, e.g. a belt.

Glossary

stylish	• attractive and fashionable. style N.
suit	• If something suits you, it looks good on you.
figure	• the shape of the body, especially that of a woman.
fashionable	• popular at the present time. opp unfashionable .
neutral	• (of a colour) not strong or bright. neutral N.
elegant	• attractive and well designed.
versatile	• having many different uses.
match	• look good with something else. matching adj.
outfit	• a set of clothes that you wear together.
transform sth	• change sth completely, usually in a positive way.
latest	• new or very recent.
accessory	• sth you wear or carry that goes with your clothes, e.g. a bag.

7 Circle the correct answer.

- It's a very **versatile**/fashionable jacket – I can wear it on different occasions.
- 1 You should buy that blouse; it **suits**/matches your skirt.
 - 2 She wore a very **unfashionable**/stylish jacket – it looked awful.
 - 3 I need to get a new **figure**/outfit for my brother's wedding.
 - 4 This coat is the **latest**/neutral fashion, but I don't particularly like the **style**/figure.
 - 5 I think that dress really **matches**/suits you.
 - 6 My mother's got a **versatile**/very good **figure**.
 - 7 You can make a simple dress look great with the right **outfits**/accessories.
 - 8 I always wear **neutral**/bright colours, but they can be a bit boring.

8 Complete the sentences.

- She can wear tight jeans because she has such a good **figure** .
- 1 I bought some pink shoes and a handbag; they look great together.
 - 2 I'd love to be like Mary; she looks so whatever she wears.
 - 3 I want a pair of those trousers; they're the fashion.
 - 4 She never wears red – it doesn't her.
 - 5 Black is very because you can wear it with almost anything.
 - 6 She's got a new hairstyle and it completely the way she looks.
 - 7 Expensive such as bags and belts can have a big effect on how you look.
 - 8 I really like her new because it all works well together.

9 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

Review: Daily life

Unit 16

- 1 Complete the table with the words from the box.

fig beetroot basil ✓ cod veal sweetcorn rabbit oysters
pomegranate salmon clams parsley broccoli raspberry carp
thyme mussels mint sea bass liver crab kidney leeks apricot

Herbs	Fruit	Vegetables	Fish	Seafood	Meat
► basil					

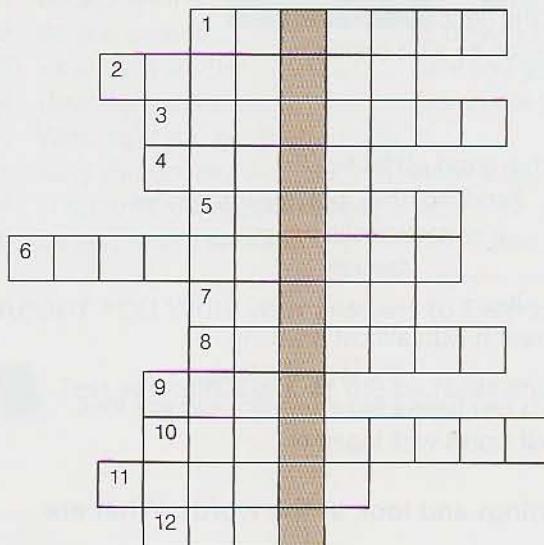
Unit 17

- 1 Complete the definitions.

- boil = cook in water
1 junk food = food which is _____ good for you
2 cut down on food = eat _____ food
3 healthy food = food which is _____ for you
4 a waste of money = a _____ use of your money
5 put on weight = become _____
6 fry = cook in _____
7 bake = cook in the oven _____ oil or fat
8 chop = _____ into small pieces
9 fattening = making you put on _____
10 recipe = a set of instructions for _____ something

Unit 18

- 1 Complete the crossword, using the clues at the top of the next page. The letters in the grey squares spell out another phrase related to money. What is it?



- 1 a piece of paper that shows that something has been paid for
- 2 informal phrase meaning 'wealthy' (two words)
- 3 a time when shops sell things at a lower price (two words)
- 4 a bad use of something, e.g. money or time
- 5 If something costs €15, you give the shop assistant €20 and you get €5 _____.
- 6 haven't got enough money to do something (two words)
- 7 informal word for having no money
- 8 a very good price for something you are buying
- 9 the amount of money that you owe someone
- 10 a lower price than before
- 11 the total sum of money
- 12 massive

The letters in the grey squares make the phrase _____

Unit 19

1 Complete the text with suitable words.

Insomnia: how to get a good night's sleep

Many people suffer from insomnia. They may not be able to (1) _____ asleep. Others may wake up during the night and not (2) _____ back to sleep again; or they may wake up too early in the morning.

Is it a serious problem?

No, not really, but if you suffer from a (3) _____ of sleep, it can make you feel tired, depressed, and (4) _____. It can also make it hard to (5) _____ on your work during the day.

How much sleep do I need?

Adults need 7–8 hours a night. If you feel (6) _____ during the day, you aren't getting enough sleep at night. However, sleep (7) _____ may change with age. For example, older people may sleep less at night but have a (8) _____ during the day.

What is a sleep diary?

A sleep diary can help you understand your sleeping patterns. You have to keep a record of when you go to sleep and wake up, how often you have a restless (9) _____, etc. And if you sleep badly, you can write down whether you have things on your (10) _____, for example, family problems, or worries at work.

Unit 20

1 Read the definitions and complete the words.

- bandage _____ thin white cloth you tie around a cut or wound
- 1 bl_____ lose blood from the body
 - 2 di_____ feeling as if everything is turning round and you might fall
 - 3 pre_____ stop something from happening
 - 4 sym_____ a change in your body which is a sign of illness
 - 5 inf_____ an illness caused by bacteria or a virus
 - 6 inj_____ an area of damage in the body, often caused by an accident
 - 7 dev_____ grow, increase, or change into something
 - 8 tho_____ in a very careful and complete way

Unit 21

1 Match 1–7 with a–h to make compound words.

- wing g a stick
1 steering b wiper
2 gear c handle
3 speed d mirror
4 rear-view e plate
5 door f wheel
6 number g mirror
7 windscreen h limit

Unit 22

1 Tick (✓) the words that are possible in the sentence.

- We were *stuck* *delayed* *stopped off* in a traffic jam.
1 The train was *cancelled* *held up* *collided* .
2 We stopped on the *outskirts* *the rush hour* *the way* .
3 He turned up in a *lane* a *vehicle* an *ambulance* .
4 They crashed into a *coach* a *van* an *accident* .
5 The car *broke down* *hired* *crashed* .
6 The passengers were *turned up* *injured* *delayed* .
7 I've got a *valid ticket* a *day return* a *traffic jam* .
8 The train *gets in* *is due* *ends up* at two o'clock.

2 Complete the phrases with a suitable verb.

- crash into another vehicle 4 g held up in traffic
1 h a car 5 s on the ice
2 p your friend up at the station 6 s off on the way for a coffee
3 t up late for a flight 7 e up in the wrong place

Unit 23

1 Circle the one which is different.

- blouse waistcoat sweater outfit 4 cotton denim silk vest
1 cap style boot sweater 5 earrings button necklace ring
2 leather bracelet suede cotton 6 suede fashionable elegant versatile
3 collar pocket dress sleeve 7 bra knickers underpants underwear

2 Complete the sentence so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.

- I don't like strong colours. I like neutral colours.
1 You can wear this blouse with anything. This blouse is very .
2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes. Her bag her shoes.
3 Her new hairstyle looks really good on her. Her new hairstyle her.
4 I need a new skirt and jacket for work. I need a new for work.
5 I'm going to get a necklace and some earrings. I'm going to get some .
6 I don't like cotton or silk. I don't like these .

24 I can describe a visit to the dentist

I'd **had toothache** for a couple of weeks. When I tried to **bite** or **chew** on one of my back teeth, it was very **painful**. I needed to have a **check-up** anyway, so I rang the **dental surgery** and **made an appointment** for Friday. The dentist **examined** my teeth and told me I needed two **fillings**, and said he would have to **take out** the tooth which was **causing** the pain. I've got to go back for **treatment** on Tuesday, and I'm **dreading** it.

spotlight *dread, look forward to*

If you are **dreading** something, you are afraid of something that is going to happen. If you are **looking forward** to something, you are happy or excited about something that is going to happen.

I dread going to the dentist.

My treatment finishes tomorrow; I'm really looking forward to that.

Glossary

have toothache	• have a pain in your tooth.
bite sth PT bit PP bitten	• cut sth with your teeth.
chew	• use your teeth to break up food in your mouth.
painful	• If something is painful , it hurts.
check-up	• a medical or dental examination to see if you are healthy.
dental surgery	• a place where a dentist sees you (also doctor's surgery).
make an appointment	• arrange a time to go to a dentist, doctor, etc.
examine sb/sth	• look at sb/sth very carefully.
filling	• a mixture that a dentist puts in your tooth to fill a hole.
take out a tooth	• remove a tooth from your mouth.
cause sth	• be the reason that sth happens, often sth bad.
treatment	• the things a doctor or dentist does to make you better. treat sb v.

1 Complete the sentences with *I*, *The tooth*, or *The dentist*.

- 1 I needed a check-up.
1 took the tooth out.
2 was causing me pain.
3 made an appointment.
4 examined my teeth.
5 was dreading going to the surgery.
- 6 gave me a filling.
7 had to have some treatment.
8 was treated at the surgery.
9 was painful.
10 bit on an apple and hurt my tooth.

2 Complete the questions.

- How often do you have a check-up?
- 1 Do you look forward to going to the dentist? Why/Why not?
- 2 What's your dental experience like?
- 3 When did you last have toothache?
- 4 When did the dentist last give you a filling?
- 5 Is it ever painful when you bite or chew your food?
- 6 When did a dentist last take out one of your teeth?

ABOUT YOU

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

25 I can describe hospital procedures

GOING INTO HOSPITAL

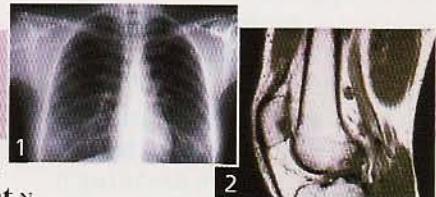
- Your doctor is **concerned** about you.
- He sends you to see a **specialist**.
- You may have **tests**, **X-rays**¹, or **scans**².
- The specialist decides how to **treat** you.
- You may have an **operation** **immediately** if it is **urgent**.
- The **surgeon** explains the **benefits** and **risks** to you, the **patient**.
- After the operation you return to the **ward**, where the nurses **care for** you.
- The operation is **successful**. When you are **well enough**, you can go home to **recover**.

go into hospital go for treatment and stay there for a night or more.
go to hospital go there for treatment, but not stay in.

concerned about sb worried about sb.

specialist a person who knows a lot about a particular subject, e.g. a heart specialist. In a hospital, this person is often called a **consultant**.

test a medical examination of part of your body, e.g. an eye test, a blood test.



treat sb give medical help to sb to make them better. **treatment** **N.**

operation In an **operation**, the doctor cuts open the body (**operates**) to treat the person.

immediately with no delay. **SYN straightaway**.
urgent needing to be done quickly.

surgeon a doctor who does medical operations.

benefit a thing that has a good or helpful result.

risk a danger that sth bad may happen.

patient a person who is having treatment.

care for sb look after sb. **SYN take care of sb**.

ward (see picture)

successful If sth is **successful**, it has gone well.

recover (from sth) become well after you have been ill.
SYN get over sth.



operating theatre



ward

spotlight enough

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means 'as good, well, old, long, etc. as is necessary'.

She's not well enough to go out. (She needs to feel better before she can go out.)

He's strong enough to get up. (He has the strength he needs to get up.)

You can also use **enough** before plural and uncountable nouns.

There aren't enough doctors. (We need more doctors.)

I haven't got enough money. (I need more money.)

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

► spezialist specialist

1 consultant _____

6 urgente _____

2 inmediately _____

7 well enogh _____

3 recouver _____

8 succesful _____

4 pacient _____

9 benifit _____

5 straightway _____

10 sirgeon _____

2 Circle the correct answer.

► The patient surgeon has the operation.

1 The consultant/patient goes into hospital.

2 The specialist/patient orders the scans.

3 The consultant/patient may have to have an X-ray.

4 The specialist/patient may need treatment urgently.

5 The surgeon/patient explains the benefits of the treatment.

6 The patient/nurse cares for the person after the operation.

7 The specialist/patient gets over the illness.

8 The nurse/patient works on the ward.

3 Complete the conversation with suitable words.

A Hi, Mary, how are you?

B Oh, not too bad, but I'm a bit concerned about my eye.

A I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter?

B Well, I've just been to hospital to see a (1) c _____ and I had some (2) t _____ too, to see what was wrong. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o _____.

A Oh, dear. Is it (4) u _____?

B Yes, I have to have it done (5) s _____ – I've got to go (6) i _____ hospital tomorrow.

A And are there any (7) r _____ with the treatment?

B I don't think so; it's a very simple operation, and it's usually very (8) s _____: 98 per cent of people can see better afterwards.

A And when will you be well (9) e _____ to start work again?

B He said I'll need a week to (10) g _____ o _____ the operation. My sister is going to (11) t _____ c _____ of me at home.

A Well, good luck – I hope it goes well.

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When? _____

2 Have you ever visited a patient in hospital? If so, when, and who was it? _____

3 When patients are on a ward, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too? _____

4 Can you see a specialist straightaway in your country, or do you have to wait? If so, how long? _____

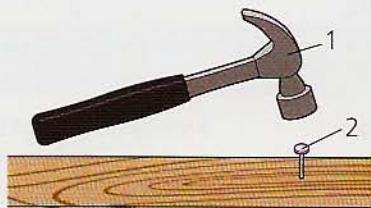
5 Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a specialist? _____

6 Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation? _____

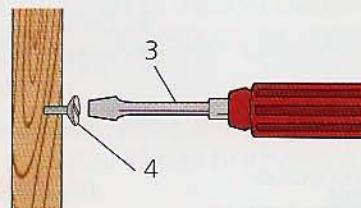
5 Test yourself. Cover the meanings in the table and look at the procedures. Can you remember the meanings of the new words?

26 I can explain household tasks

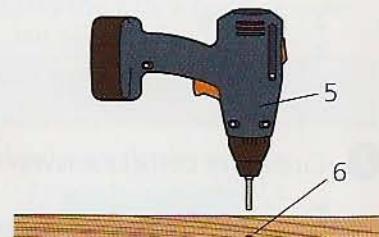
A Using tools and household objects



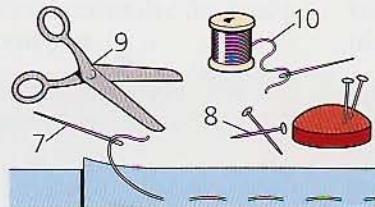
You use a **hammer**¹ to **bang a nail**² into a piece of wood.



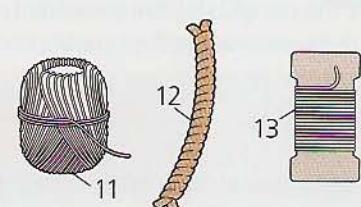
You use a **screwdriver**³ to **tighten** or **loosen** a **screw**⁴.



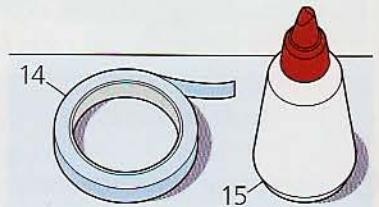
You use a **drill**⁵ to make a **hole**⁶. A hammer, a screwdriver, and a drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**⁷, **pins**⁸, **scissors**⁹, and **cotton/thread**¹⁰ when you're **sewing**.



You use **string**¹¹, **rope**¹², or **wire**¹³ to **tie** things together.



You use TM**Sellotape**¹⁴ or **glue**¹⁵ to **stick** things **together**.

1 Circle the correct word.

- Stick it together with glue/cotton.
- 1 Sew it with a pin/needle.
- 2 Cut it with scissors/a drill.
- 3 Tighten it with a hammer/screwdriver.
- 4 Tie it together with rope/nails.
- 5 Bang it in with string/a hammer.
- 6 Make a hole with thread/a drill.
- 7 Stick it together with Sellotape/wire.
- 8 Loosen the screw/cotton.

spotlight Nouns

Cotton, thread, string, rope, wire, Sellotape, and glue are all uncountable nouns. Scissors is a plural noun.

*Where's the string? I need some glue.
Where are the scissors?*

2 Complete the sentences.

- She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with Sellotape.
- 1 I've got a hammer and a screwdriver, but I haven't got any other _____.
- 2 When you make a skirt, you cut the fabric with _____, you hold the pieces together with pins, and then you _____ it with a needle and _____.
- 3 If you break the handle off a cup, you can _____ it on with _____.
- 4 I tied all the keys together with a piece of _____.
- 5 If the screws on your door handle are loose, use a _____ to _____ them.
- 6 A drill is very useful if you need to make a _____ in a wall.
- 7 Pass the hammer and I can bang in this _____.
- 8 We _____ a long rope to the tree for the children to play on.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

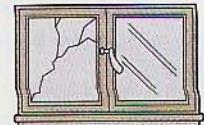
B Common problems

Our flat: things to do

- The lamp isn't working. Try changing the light bulb.
- The radiator's leaking. We'll have to repair it.
- The window's cracked. It needs replacing.
- The TV isn't working properly.
- The radio is faulty.
- The bedroom needs decorating.
- There's something wrong with the door. It keeps sticking.
- The lift's out of order. I hope they fix it soon.
- There's a stain on the carpet which we need to remove.



light bulb



cracked window

MEANING

If sth isn't **working**, it isn't functioning or it's broken.

leak allow liquid or gas to go through a hole or crack. **leak** **N.**

cracked (see picture)

replace sth exchange sth for sth that is better or newer.

properly correctly or well.

faulty not working well; only working sometimes.

decorate a room put paint or paper on the walls.

wrong causing problems or difficulties.

stick be in one position and difficult to move.

out of order If a machine or piece of equipment in a public place is **out of order**, it isn't working.

stain **N, v** (see picture)



stain

remove sth take sth away.

Spotlight repair, fix, or mend sth

Repair sth, **fix sth**, and **mend sth** all mean 'put sth right that is broken or damaged'.

Can you **repair/fix the fridge**? It took ages to **repair/mend the roof**.

We use **mend** and **repair**, rather than **fix**, to talk about repairing clothes.

I **mended** the hole in my pocket. I must get my shoes **repaired**.

4 Tick (✓) the words which are possible.

- My shoe has a hole in it. Can you **repair** **mend** **remove** it for me?
- 1 This table's broken. We need to **decorate** **fix** **repair** it.
- 2 Is the bedroom lamp OK? ~ No, it's **faulty** **out of order** **not working** .
- 3 We're going to **remove** **replace** **decorate** the fridge.
- 4 We need a new **lamp** **stain** **light bulb** .
- 5 The public phone is **out of order** **is wrong** **isn't working properly** .
- 6 The radiator is **leaking** **faulty** **sticking** .

5 Complete the text.

The house was in a terrible condition. The rain had come into all the bedrooms because the roof was

► leaking , and there were (1) s _____ on the walls and carpets. A builder (2) f _____ the roof for us, and after that, we had to (3) d _____ all the bedrooms. We also had to (4) r _____ several windows that were (5) c _____. Then we realized that the central heating wasn't (6) w _____ , and it cost a lot to have it (7) r _____. The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work (8) p _____ – some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, and the taps were (9) l _____. too. The previous owners had left two old cars in the garden and we had to pay someone to (10) r _____ them. It was all so expensive.

6 Test yourself. Look at the text, and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

27 I can describe housework

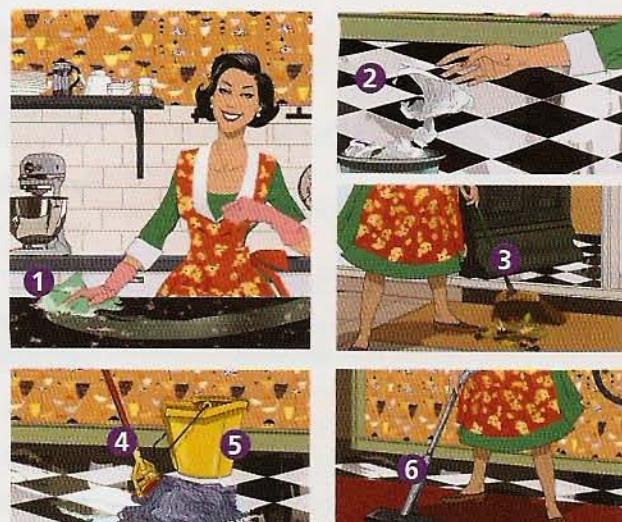
Mrs Bristow's Handy Housework Routine

Daily tasks

Make the beds and **do the washing up**. Clean the bathroom and kitchen. **Wipe** all surfaces with a soapy **cloth**¹ to remove **grease**. **Tidy up** and **throw away**² any rubbish.

Weekly tasks

Using a **broom**³, **sweep** the area outside your front door to remove **mud** and general **dirt**. Wash the floors with a **mop**⁴ and **bucket**⁵ and warm, soapy water. **Vacuum**⁶ the carpets, and then **dust** or **polish** the furniture. Wipe the inside of the fridge.



1 Write the missing parts of speech.

- dirty ADJ dirt N
- 1 dusty ADJ _____ N
- 2 mud N _____ ADJ
- 3 greasy ADJ _____ N
- 4 vacuum cleaner N _____ V

2 Complete the phrases.

- Do the daily tasks .
- 1 _____ the floor to remove mud and dirt.
- 2 Use a _____ to hoover the carpet.
- 3 Tidy _____ the kitchen every day.
- 4 Remove grease with a soapy _____ .
- 5 _____ the washing up.
- 6 Use a _____ and _____ to wash the floor.
- 7 _____ or _____ the furniture once a week.
- 8 Use a cloth to _____ the kitchen surfaces.
- 9 Use a broom to _____ the floor.
- 10 _____ away any rubbish.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Look again at Mrs Bristow's tasks. In your home, which do you do?
- 2 Which tasks does someone else do in your home?

Glossary

- task** a piece of work you must do.
- do the washing up** wash dishes, plates, glasses, etc. after a meal.
- wipe sth** clean or dry sth with a cloth.
- grease** oil or fat that comes from cooking.
- greasy** ADJ.
- tidy (up)** make a place look better by putting things in the correct place.
- sweep sth** remove dirt from the floor or ground with a **broom**³.
- mud** soft, wet earth. (If you walk in a field after rain, your shoes will be **muddy** ADJ.)
- dirt** a substance that isn't clean (e.g. mud).
- dirty** ADJ.
- vacuum sth** clean a carpet or floor using a **vacuum cleaner**⁶. SYN **hoover** V.
- dust sth** remove very small pieces of dry dirt (dust N) from sth. **dusty** ADJ.
- polish sth** make sth shine by rubbing it with a cream or liquid (polish N).

28 I can talk to a hairdresser

I'd like to **have** my hair **cut** / **have a haircut**.

I'm **letting** it grow long, so just **trim** it / **give it a trim**, please. I'd like to **keep** the **fringe**¹ and the **parting**² on the left.



What would you like?

I want to keep the same **hairstyle**, please. I'd like a **cut and blow-dry** (= dry with a **hairdryer**).

hairdryer



I want to have it **perm** / I'd like a **perm**, please.



Could you **colour** it for me, please?



spotlight *have/get sth done*

If you **have sth done** or **get sth done**, you pay sb to do sth for you. Compare:

I have my hair cut every month. (I go to the hairdresser's.)

I colour my hair every month. (I do it myself.)

Glossary

let allow sth to happen without trying to stop it.

trim sth cut sth a little so that it is shorter and tidier. SYN **give sth a trim**, **trim N**.

keep sth make sth stay in a particular state or condition and not change.

hairstyle the way your hair is cut and arranged.

1 Complete the words.

► **h a i r c u t**

3 **h _ _ r s t _ _ e**

6 **t _ _ m**

1 **f r _ _ e**

4 **h _ _ r d _ _ r**

7 **c _ l _ _ r**

2 **s _ s s r**

5 **p _ t _ n g**

8 **b l _ w - d r**

2 Put the words in order, and add one more word.

► going / I'm / hair / to / cut / have I'm going to have my hair cut.

1 could / colour / you / me / for / please? Could I colour your hair for me, please?

2 Sasha / her / letting / is / hair Sasha is letting her hair.

3 fringe / like / a / parting / I'd / and / a / right / the I'd like a fringe and a right parting.

4 please / blow-dry / like / a / and / I'd Please blow-dry a and I'd like.

5 want / please / hairstyle / same / I / to / the I want to please the same hairstyle.

6 to / she's / her / trimmed / going / hair She's going to trim her hair.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Are you letting your hair grow at the moment? Yes, I am.

2 When did you last have your hair cut? Two weeks ago.

3 Have you got a fringe or a parting? I have a fringe.

4 Where do you get your hair cut? At a hairdresser's.

5 In your family, who has their hair permed or coloured? My mother has her hair coloured.

4 Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the requests?

Review: Getting things done

Unit 24

- 1 Read the dentist's questions and statements. One word is missing in each one. Where from? Write it at the end.

- How long have you / toothache? had _____
- 1 Is it when you bite? _____
 - 2 I will probably have to the tooth out. _____
 - 3 This is the tooth which is the pain. _____
 - 4 When did you last a check-up? _____
 - 5 Can you come back to the tomorrow? _____
 - 6 Just ask the receptionist to make an for you. _____
 - 7 There's a hole in this tooth – you need a. _____
 - 8 I'm going to your teeth and then decide what you need. _____

Unit 25

- 1 Which words are being defined?

- a person who knows a lot about a subject specialist
1 give someone medical help to make them better _____
2 worried about someone or something _____
3 a doctor who operates on you _____
4 another word for 'immediately' _____
5 something that has a good or helpful result _____
6 look after someone, especially if they are ill _____
7 become well after you have been ill _____
8 a person who is ill and having medical treatment _____
9 the place in a hospital where sick people stay _____
10 a danger that something bad could happen _____

Unit 26

- 1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

- I'm going to decorate the bedroom. Sandro doesn't like the colour of the walls.
1 There's a _____ on the carpet. Do you know how to _____ it?
2 Did you know the lift was _____ order? ~ Yes, but someone is going to _____ it later today.
3 I'm afraid this radiator is _____ ; there's water on the carpet.
4 I've got a hole in my pocket. Could you _____ it for me, please?
5 This lamp isn't _____. Have we got any light ____ ?
6 I'm afraid there's something _____ the front door. We may have to get someone to _____ it.

2 Which word is being described? Write it at the end.

- You use one when you're sewing. needle
- 1 You use one to bang a nail in the wall.
 - 2 You use one to make a hole in the wall.
 - 3 You use one to tighten a screw.
 - 4 You use them to cut things.
 - 5 You use it to tie a boat to a wall.
 - 6 You use it to tie some sticks together.
 - 7 You use it to stick a broken bowl together.
 - 8 You use it to wrap a parcel.

Unit 27

1 Complete the sentences.

Mr Bristow's Handy Housework excuses

- I couldn't do the washing up because there was no hot water.
- 1 I couldn't sweep the floor because I couldn't find the .
 - 2 I couldn't wash the floor because there was a mop but no .
 - 3 I couldn't Hoover the carpets because the wasn't working.
 - 4 I couldn't away the rubbish because the bins were all full.
 - 5 I couldn't the furniture because the cloth was dirty.
 - 6 And I didn't the surfaces because they all looked clean to me, anyway.

Unit 28

1 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- I like your new style of hair. I like your new hairstyle.
- 1 I made my hair cut last week.
 - 2 I just want trim, please.
 - 3 I'd like a cutting and blow-dry, please.
 - 4 Are you leaving your hair grow?
 - 5 Can you pass me the scissor?
 - 6 She's got a parted on the left.
 - 7 I'm having my hair colour tomorrow.
 - 8 Can I borrow your hairdry?

29 I can describe urban life

A The inner city

I parked in the **multi-storey car park** and went the rest of the way on foot. The street lights had just come on, and I could see the **pavements** were **filthy**. At the entrance to the **subway**, there was an old guy **begging** for money. I gave him something and **hurried** on down. There was the usual **graffiti** all over the walls, and **litter** everywhere. I came up the other side and passed a man who was **whistling** quite cheerfully, but I found this part of the **inner city** so **depressing** that I **wondered** if my decision to walk had been a good idea.

Glossary

multi-storey	• a large car park with several floors.
car park	
pavement	• the part of the road where people walk.
filthy	• very dirty.
subway	• a tunnel that goes under a road or railway so people can walk to the other side.
beg	• ask for food or money.
hurry	• move or do sth quickly. SYN rush .
graffiti	• pictures or writing on a wall in a public place (often humorous or political).
litter	• paper and rubbish that is dropped and left on the ground in a public place.
whistle	• make a musical sound with your lips nearly closed.
inner city	• the part of a large city which is near the centre and often poor.
depressing	• making you feel sad and without hope.
wonder	• ask yourself questions about sth.

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

► **hury** hurry

1 **fillthy** filthy

2 **liter** litter

3 **pavment** pavement

4 **whisle** whistle

5 **grafiti** graffiti

6 **deppresing** depressing

2 Complete the definitions.

► inner city = poor parts of a city, near the centre

1 **filthy** = very dirty

2 **rush** = move or do something quickly

3 **pavement** = place where people walk

4 **litter** = paper dropped on the ground

5 **multi-storey** = with several floors

6 **beg** = ask for food or money

7 **whistle** = make a sound with your lips nearly closed

8 **graffiti** = pictures or writing on a wall in a public place

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

► My dog comes back to me when I whistle.

1 I hate people who drop litter in the street. Why can't they put it in a bin?

2 It's a dangerous road, so use the pavement to get to the other side.

3 Leila says that someone in our class is getting married. I wonder who it is.

4 You've got lots of time – you don't need to hurry to get the train.

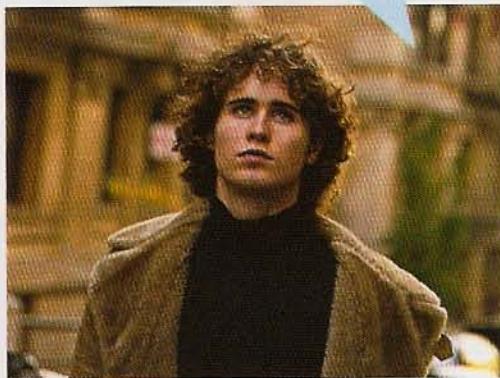
5 Two men were cleaning the graffiti off the walls in the subway.

6 The street was **filthy** and it was pouring with rain. It was very depressing.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

B In a suburb

The **area** where I live is **ideal**. It's a **suburb** not far from the centre and it's quite **lively**, but there's still a feeling of **space**, and my block of flats is **surrounded by** trees. It's also a **handy** place to live because there are good **local** shops, and a bus service that gets me into the centre in 15 to 20 minutes. The only **disadvantage** is that with the **growth** in the population, it's gradually becoming more **built-up** than it used to be, which is **a shame**.



spotlight *area, region, district, part*

The word **area** can be used for part of a town, country, or the world. A **region** is part of a country or the world, e.g. *a desert region*. A **district** is part of a town or country, often with special qualities, e.g. *the financial district*. A **part** is often used when we are talking about a town, e.g. *a lovely part of the city*.

Glossary

suburb an area outside the centre of a town, where a lot of people live.

ideal perfect; the best possible.

lively full of interest, and with things to do.

space a place or area that is empty and not used.

surrounded by sth If a building is **surrounded by sth**, that thing is all around it.

handy INF located near to things you need. SYN **convenient**.

local located in the area where you live.

disadvantage a situation or thing that is not good or causes problems. SYN **drawback**.

OPP **advantage**.

growth an increase in size or number.

built-up with a lot of buildings.

a shame a fact or situation that makes you feel disappointed. SYN **a pity**.

5 A **handy/lively area**.

6 It's a **commercial district/area**.

7 It's a **real disadvantage/drawback**.

8 It's a **large space/suburb**.

5 Same or different? Write S or D.

- One of the **suburbs/areas** outside the centre. **S**
- 1 The **ideal/perfect** place to live.
- 2 A **mountainous area/region**.
- 3 We need more **growth/space**.
- 4 It was a **pity/shame**.

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- There used to be lots of space, but now it's a really **built-up** area.
- 1 I live in a about two kilometres from the centre.
- 2 Unfortunately, the whole area is by factories, which is a
- 3 There are a few shops just round the corner.
- 4 It's very because it's close to my children's school and the place where I work.
- 5 It's a nice area with great shops; the only is that the bus service is terrible.
- 6 We've found our house: it has absolutely everything we want.

7 ABOUT YOUR AREA Write your answers, or ask another student.

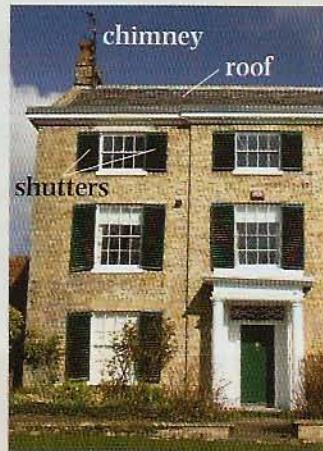
- 1 Is your area built-up, or is there a feeling of space?
- 2 What is your home surrounded by?
- 3 What local shops do you have?
- 4 Is it a handy place to live for you?
- 5 What are the disadvantages?

30 I can describe parts of a building

A **substantial** and **impressive** **semi-detached** house full of **original features**, and just a short walk from the town centre.

Inside, the **hall** leads to two **spacious** reception rooms and an **enormous** kitchen. Upstairs there are four bedrooms and two bathrooms on the first and second floors, with a narrow **staircase** to a further bedroom in the **attic**. There is also a **basement** which could be **converted** into a **separate** one-bedroom flat, and a **cellar** **currently** used to **store** things.

Outside, the house has pretty **shutters** either side of the front windows. There is a **lawn** at the front, and a **drive** provides plenty of parking. There is also a small **walled** garden at the back.



Glossary

substantial

• large and/or strong.

impressive

• (of a building) large and very good to look at.

semi-detached

• joined to one other house, forming a pair of houses.

original

• existing from the time when sth was first made or done.

feature

• an important part of sth, and often a part that you notice.

lead

• If sth **leads** to a place, you can go along it to that place.

spacious

• large, and having a lot of space.

enormous

• very large. **SYN** **huge**. **OPP** **tiny**.

staircase

• a set of stairs.

attic

• the space or room under the roof of a house.

basement

• a room or part of a building that is partly or completely below ground level.

convert sth into sth

• change sth from one form or use to another.

separate

• not connected or together.

cellar

• an underground room without windows, where things are often kept.

currently

• at the moment (NOT **actually**).

store sth

• keep sth in a place for future use. **storage** **N**.

lawn

• an area of grass in a park or garden.

drive

• a wide path for cars that leads to the front door of a house.

walled

• If a garden or other area is **walled**, it has a **wall** around it (a wall is usually made of **brick**¹ or **stone**²).

spotlight **passage**,
corridor, **hall**

A **passage** is a long, narrow way with walls on both sides that leads somewhere, e.g. *an underground passage*.

A **corridor** is a passage in a large building or on a train. A **hall** is a room or small passage just inside the entrance to a house.



1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

► starcase staircase

3 seperate separate

6 spacious spacious

1 impresive impressive

4 attick attic

7 currantly currently

2 kellar cellar

5 basemant basement

8 featur feature

2 Circle the correct word.

- The flat is substantial/impressive, but not very attractive.
- I'm on the ground floor and my sister lives downstairs in the cellar/basement.
 - There were no seats on the train, so I had to stand in the hall/corridor.
 - There's a very wide hall/corridor in our flat.
 - He parked his car in the attic/drive.
 - Just after the newsagent's, there's a little passage/hall that leads to the High Street.
 - We've got a small field/lawn in the garden where we sit in the summer.

3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- There's a large living room. spacious
- The living room is absolutely huge.
 - Where do you keep your garden furniture in the winter?
 - They've got a very small garden.
 - There's a very elegant set of stairs up to the first floor.
 - The back door goes into the garden.
 - We could change that room into a bathroom.

4 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has just bought a very ► substantial six-bedroom house. It's a 1930s semi-
(1) d_____ house, and (2) c_____ it is in terrible condition, but it will be very nice
when he has done some work on it. As you approach it, there's a long (3) d_____ up to the
front door, with enough space for about three cars. Inside, the hall (4) l_____ to the living
room, dining room, and kitchen, and from the kitchen there are stairs down to a (5) c_____
where they plan to (6) s_____ wine and other things. At the back there's a (7) h_____
garden, big enough for a football pitch, and around the garden there's a high stone
(8) w_____. There are two garages, and they might (9) _____ one into a study.

5 Complete the sentences.

- At the back, there's a garden with a huge lawn.
- One of the main _____ of the building is the beautiful windows.
 - Can you see the smoke coming out of the _____?
 - It's an old house and it still has the _____ windows and fireplaces.
 - There's a big cupboard in the hall which is useful for _____.
 - I need about 100 _____ to finish the low wall at the front.
 - I'll have to go up on the _____ to repair the chimney.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- Have you got shutters at your windows? If so, are they on the outside or inside?
- Have you got a garden with a lawn? If so, what do you use it for?
- Is there an attic in your building? If so, what's in it?
- Have you got a basement or cellar? If so, what are they used for?
- Is there a drive outside your building?
- Would you describe any rooms in your home as spacious or tiny?

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

31 I can describe objects

A What's it made of? 🎧



a rubber tyre



a woollen blanket /
a blanket made of wool



plastic toys



a metal ladder



a wax candle



a silver candlestick



a gold medal



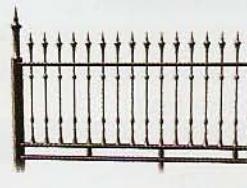
a cardboard box



a steel pipe



a concrete bridge



iron railings



a wooden fence /
a fence made of wood

1 Circle the most logical word.

- a table made of wood/wool
- 1 a rubber boot/book
- 2 a concrete/cardboard wall
- 3 a rubber ladder/tyre
- 4 a wooden/woollen sweater
- 5 a wooden/silver fence
- 6 a silver/woollen medal
- 7 a wax/wooden candlestick
- 8 a plastic/concrete toy
- 9 wax/gold earrings
- 10 a plastic blanket/pipe
- 11 concrete/metal railings

spotlight Noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A **rubber tyre** is a tyre made of rubber; a **letter box** is a box for letters.

2 Complete the sentences.

- A sweater is often made of wool.....
- 1 Jewellery is usually made of s..... or g.....
- 2 Toys are usually made of w..... or p.....
- 3 Bathroom and kitchen pipes are usually made of p..... or m.....
- 4 A ladder is usually made of w..... or m.....
- 5 A box can be made of p....., w....., or c.....
- 6 A bridge can be made of i....., s....., or c.....

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the words?

B Shapes and lines

Shapes	Noun	Adjective	Lines	Adjective
	circle	round, circular		straight
	square	square		curved
	rectangle	rectangular		parallel
	triangle	triangular		vertical
	oval	oval		horizontal
	point	pointed		diagonal

4 Complete the words.

- straight
- 1 point 8 circle
 2 L-sha 9 trian
 3 cur 10 horizon
 4 rectan 11 squ
 5 verti 12 paral
 6 circu 13 diam
 7 ro 14 s -shaped

spotlight *shape, -shaped*

You can describe the shape of things using **shape** or **-shaped**:

a card in the shape of a heart
a swimming pool in the shape of a leaf
an L-shaped room = a room in the shape of the letter L
a diamond-shaped buckle
a star-shaped button



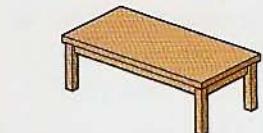
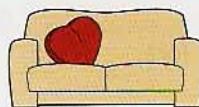
5 Complete the sentences below with words from the box.

square round oval triangular curved diagonal✓ rectangular straight pointed

- A diagonal line connects opposite corners in a square.
- 1 An egg is
 2 A computer screen is usually
 3 A DVD is
- 4 The box your CD comes in is
 5 A shape with three sides is
 6 A knife is at the end.
 7 A ball has a surface.
 8 A ruler is , not curved.

6 What can you see in the pictures?

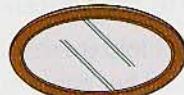
- a heart-shaped cushion / a cushion in the shape of a heart



1 _____



3 _____



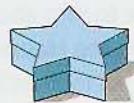
5 _____



2 _____



4 _____



6 _____

- Test yourself. Look at the pictures and lines in the table and cover the words. Say the words.

32 I can describe the senses

A Seeing and hearing

Example	Meaning
Look ¹ carefully, and you can see the bridge over the river. From here it looks ² very small.	look ¹ turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it. see know or notice sth using your eyes. look ² seem from what you can see.
We watched TV for an hour.	watch sth look at sth for some time to see what happens.
He appears ¹ to be very happy. A dog appeared ² from behind a tree.	appear ¹ seem. appear ² If sth appears , you suddenly begin to see it. OPP disappear.
The children stared at the man with the long red hair.	stare at sb/sth look at sb/sth for a long time without moving your eyes.
Jay always notices what I'm wearing. He's very observant .	notice sth see sth and be aware of it. observant good at noticing things.
He glanced at me and smiled.	glance at sb/sth look quickly at sb/sth.
A I can hear something. B It sounds like a child crying.	hear sth receive sounds with your ears without trying. sound like sth make a noise that is like sth.
She listens to the radio a lot.	listen pay attention to sth you hear, often for a long time.
I overheard them in the bank.	overhear sb hear other people's conversation by accident.
I'm sorry, I didn't quite catch what you said.	catch sth hear or understand what sb is saying; usually used when you <i>don't</i> hear or understand sth.

spotlight can + sense verbs

We don't use **see**, **hear**, **smell**, or **taste** in the continuous tenses; we often use **can** (as in the examples above).
I can see two boats in this photo. (NOT I see or I'm seeing two boats.)

1 Circle the correct answer.

- Can you **hear**/listen to that noise?
- 1 Did you notice/watch the colour of her eyes?
- 2 I can't **see**/look at anything from here.
- 3 Don't look/watch behind you.
- 4 How long did you **see**/watch TV for?
- 5 I **glanced** at/stared Julia.
- 6 I **see**/can see something in your eye.
- 7 I **overheard**/caught a funny story on the bus.
- 8 What can you **listen**/hear?

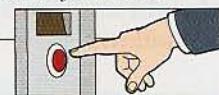
2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- When I told them, I **noticed** that they both looked very surprised.
- 1 She said her name but I'm afraid I didn't **realize** what it was.
- 2 I **heard** hear a bird singing. It **sounded** like a blackbird.
- 3 Why is that man **staring** at me? Have I done something wrong?
- 4 I spoke to him about the exam. He doesn't **seem** to be nervous.
- 5 Did you **see** Nadia last night? I thought she **looked** ill.
- 6 I **glanced** at my watch and realized it was time to go.
- 7 Sally always **notices** if I change my hairstyle. She's very **observant**.
- 8 A minute ago she was here, then she **disappeared**. I don't know where she is now.

3 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the words in bold mean?

B Smelling, tasting, and touching

Word	Example	Meaning
smell sth	I can smell lunch ...	notice or recognize sth using your nose.
smell like sth	... it smells like fish.	have a smell like the smell of sth / sth else.
stink <small>INF</small>	This towel stinks . I must wash it.	have a horrible smell.
flavour	They sell 30 flavours of ice cream.	the sensation of sth in your mouth (e.g. <i>a chocolate/strawberry flavour</i>).
taste	Try this wine. It tastes very strange.	have a particular flavour.
salty	The soup is very salty .	having the taste of or containing a lot of salt.
bland	This cheese is quite bland .	without much flavour.
touch sth	When I touched the back wall ...	put your fingers on sth.
feel feel like sth	... it felt a bit damp (= a little wet).	give a sensation of or like sth when touched (e.g. <i>it feels hot, it feels like wood</i>).
press sth	If you press that button, you get a ticket.	put your hand or finger on sth firmly.
grab sth	He grabbed my mobile and ran off.	take sth with a sudden movement.
tap sb/sth	Someone rapped me on the arm.	touch sb/sth quickly with your hands or feet.
rub sth	I rubbed the book with a soft cloth to get the dirt off.	move your hand firmly backwards and forwards over the surface of sth.



4 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word that has the same meaning.

- Most cities such as London have a traffic problem. like
- 1 This blanket has a horrible smell.
- 2 My towel still feels a little wet.
- 3 The soup is without much flavour.
- 4 The film was similar to his others.
- 5 I put my hand on the radiator and it felt cold.
- 6 She moved her hand firmly over her leg.

spotlight *like*

Like can mean 'similar to' and it can mean 'such as':

*This flower smells **like** honey.*
(The flower has a smell similar to that of honey.)

*Some people **like** Maggie live alone.* (Maggie is one example.)

5 Complete the sentences.

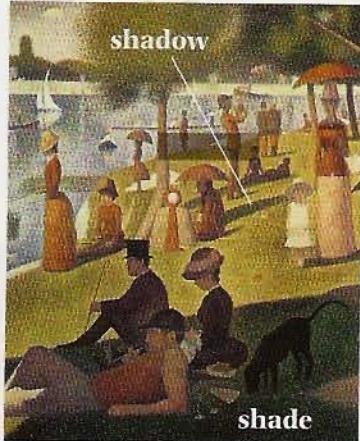
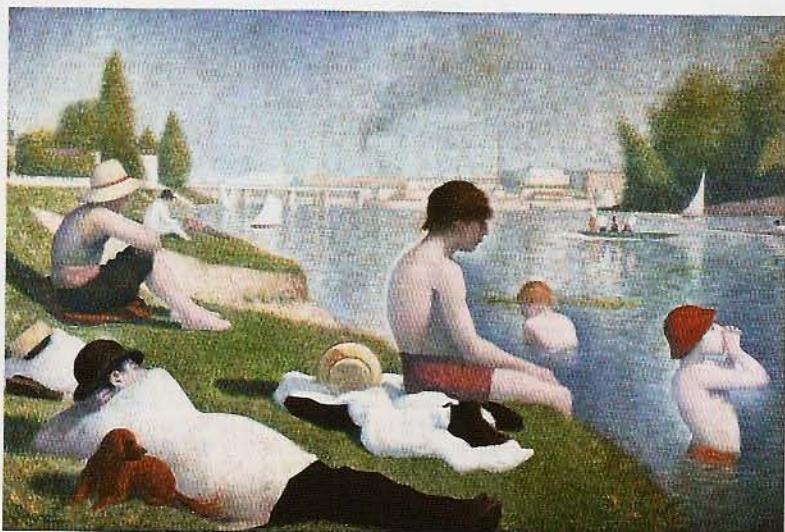
- You don't need salt. It's already very salty.
- 1 The persimmon is a strange fruit. It looks a tomato but doesn't taste one.
- 2 They were both their feet to the music.
- 3 the button if you want the receptionist to come.
- 4 Be careful – don't the door. The paint is still wet.
- 5 He me on the shoulder and asked me to move my head.
- 6 The policeman the thief's arm and pushed him to the ground.
- 7 When I came downstairs, I could the steak frying; it was wonderful.
- 8 You had ice cream, didn't you? What did you have? ~ Strawberry, but it didn't like strawberry.

6 Test yourself. Cover the examples and meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

33 I can describe a painting

This **painting**, *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat, **illustrates** a typical **scene** of 19th-century **leisure** and the developing **industry** in this suburb of Paris.

In the foreground¹ a group of workmen are relaxing by the river; **in the distance** you can **just** see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and **ignoring** each other, **even** the little dog in the **bottom left-hand corner**². We can **sense** the **warmth** of the summer's day in the **bright** sunlight, light colours, and **shadows**.



- 1 (in) the foreground
- 2 (in) the bottom left-hand corner
- 3 (in) the top right-hand corner
- 4 (on) the left-hand side
- 5 (on) the right-hand side
- 6 (in) the centre/middle (of) the picture

Glossary

- illustrate sth** • explain sth in a picture or diagram.
illustration N.
- scene** • a view you can see in a picture or from the place where you are.
- leisure** • time when you do not have to work.
- industry** • the production of goods in factories.
industrial ADJ.
- in the distance** • far away from you.
- just** • If you can **just** see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.
- ignore sb/sth** • pay no attention to sb/sth.
- even** • used for emphasizing sth that is surprising.
- sense sth** • get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear.
- warmth** • a pleasant heat.
- bright** • having a lot of light. OPP **dark**. **brightness** N.

spotlight painting and drawing

Bathers at Asnières is a **painting**. Seurat was a **painter** or **artist** (**artist** is a more general word). **paint** V.

A **drawing** is a picture made with a pencil or pen, but not paint. **draw** V.

I paint a lot of portraits.
I can't draw faces very well.

1 Look at the big picture on page 90. Write your answers to the questions.

- Where is the man in the red swimming costume sitting? In the middle of the picture.
- 1 How many people are there in the foreground? _____
 - 2 Are the boats in the foreground or the background? _____
 - 3 Are the men sitting in the shade? _____
 - 4 Is the dog in the bottom left-hand corner? _____
 - 5 Can you see the dog's shadow? _____
 - 6 Is the picture a drawing or a painting? _____
 - 7 Where are the factories? _____
 - 8 On which side of the picture is the boy in the river? _____
 - 9 Are the colours dark or bright? _____
 - 10 On which side is the man wearing the light-coloured hat? _____

2 Cover the glossary on page 90. Complete the definitions.

- even = used to emphasize something that is surprising
- 1 ignore = pay _____ attention to someone or something
 - 2 leisure = time when you don't have to _____
 - 3 sense = have a _____ about something that you can't see or hear
 - 4 shade = a place which is _____ and cool because the sun doesn't shine there
 - 5 scene = a view you can _____ in a picture or from the place where you are
 - 6 bright = having a lot of _____

3 Put the words in order. Use contractions, e.g. it's, they're.

- dog / foreground / the / in / is / the The dog's in the foreground.
- 1 the / it / you / see / in / can / distance _____
 - 2 bottom / the / corner / he / is / in / lying / left-hand _____
 - 3 of / right-hand / is / on / the / it / side / the/ painting? _____
 - 4 they / the / centre / drawing / of / are / in / sitting / the _____
 - 5 in / left-hand / some / there / corner / are / trees / top / the _____

4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.

warm/warmth	bright/brightness ✓	just/even	illustrate/illustration
industry/industrial	painter/painting	shade/shadow	

- This painter often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
- 1 He painted many _____ scenes of factories and factory workers.
 - 2 The paintings _____ the friendship between the three women.
 - 3 You can feel the _____ of the sun shining down on you.
 - 4 You can see the _____ on the wall in the art gallery.
 - 5 People go swimming in the river, _____ in winter when it is cold.
 - 6 It's so hot! Shall we go and sit in the _____?

5 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What's the name of the artist who painted it? _____
- 2 Do you know when it was painted? _____
- 3 What does the painting illustrate? _____
- 4 What do you like about the painting? _____
- 5 Do you do any painting or drawing yourself? If so, what do you do? _____

34 I can describe actions

A Using your hands



Don't **squeeze** the tube in the middle!



She's **tearing** the letter **up**.



He **dragged** the **cabinet** across the floor.



He **knocked** on the door.



He **scratched** the **lid** of the box.



Shake the bottle before opening it.



The thief **smashed** the window.



She **folded** the paper **in half / in two**.



She **sprayed** the **leaves** with water.

1 Can you do these things? Write Yes or No.

- smash a tube of toothpaste No
- 1 fold a sheet in half _____
- 2 scratch coffee _____
- 3 drag a suitcase along a path _____
- 4 spray perfume on yourself _____

- 5 squeeze a wet jumper to get water out _____
- 6 knock on water _____
- 7 tear up a cabinet _____
- 8 shake a tin of paint _____

2 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

spray knock ✓ scratch drag smash fold tear up shake squeeze

- I was woken up by someone knocking on my window.
- 1 The boat was incredibly heavy so we had to drag it down the beach to the sea.
- 2 I threw all my old bank documents and threw them away.
- 3 He folded his scarf and put it on the table.
- 4 Don't squeeze that bottle of sparkling water before you open it.
- 5 He kicked the ball hard and unfortunately smashed the neighbour's window.
- 6 You'll need to tear up about six oranges to make a glass of juice.
- 7 My little brother took a nail and scratched the side of the car. My dad was furious.
- 8 She put on her make-up and sprayed perfume behind her ears.

3 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Can you remember the sentences?

B Making noises

Word	Example	Meaning
shout	Don't shout! I can hear you.	speak in a loud voice.
whisper	He whispered 'I love you' in her ear.	speak very quietly so that other people can't hear you.
cry	The baby next door cried all night.	 tears drops of liquid that come out from your eyes when you cry.
scream	The plane dropped suddenly and we screamed.	cry out in a high voice because you are in pain, upset, frightened, etc.
burst into tears	He sat down and burst into tears.	start crying suddenly.
burst out laughing	I walked into the room and they all burst out laughing.	start laughing suddenly.
breathe (in/out)	Breathe in, count to ten, and then breathe out.	take air into your lungs and let it out again. breath N.
sigh	He sat down and sighed: it had been a hard decision.	let out a long deep breath that shows you are sad, bored, relieved, etc.
sneeze	I've got a terrible cold. I've been sneezing all day.	 sneezing

spotlight *loud, out loud / aloud, silent, silence*

Loud means 'making a lot of noise'. opp silent. silence N.

The radio's too **loud**. We worked **in silence**.

If you speak **out loud** (syn **aloud**) you speak so that people can hear you.

I read the letter **out loud / aloud** to my father.

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word or phrase.

- If you shout angrily at a child, they might cry .
- 1 When you have a cold, you might a lot.
 - 2 If you eat onions, your might smell.
 - 3 If something is incredibly funny, you might .
 - 4 If your nose is blocked, you have to and out through your mouth.
 - 5 If you don't want to be heard when you're speaking to someone, you should .
 - 6 If you are very relieved that something has gone well, you might .
 - 7 If you suddenly get some very sad news, you might .
 - 8 If your friend isn't looking and a car is coming, you would to him.
 - 9 If all the class wanted to hear a short story you've written, you could read it .
 - 10 The room was completely ; no one said a word.
 - 11 If you upset her, she will burst into .
 - 12 You can't speak in an exam; you must work in .

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. When did you last ...

- 1 hear someone screaming? Who was it, and why? _____
- 2 burst out laughing? Why? _____
- 3 whisper to someone? Why? _____
- 4 read something out loud? What was it? _____

Review: Describing things

Unit 29

1 True or false? Write T or F.

► You have to pay to go through a subway. F

1 The suburbs of a city are the areas where people with very little money live.

2 It's depressing if your home is surrounded by litter.

3 A multi-storey car park has only one floor.

4 The pavement is where people walk.

5 The inner city is often quite built-up.

6 Having local shops near your home isn't very convenient.

2 Complete the text.

► The district where I live now is very clean – not like the area I used to live in, which was (1) f It's also quite (2) l because there are several cafés and restaurants round the corner, but there isn't a supermarket nearby, which is a (3) p Not far away, there's plenty of open (4) s to go for walks, and it's also very (5) h because I'm close to the station, so I can get to work easily. Where I lived before, you used to see lots of (6) g on the subway walls, and people sitting on the pavement (7) b for money. But there is one (8) d to where I live now: my friends live in the older part of town, so I see them less often.

Unit 30

1 Write a sentence linking a word on the left with a word on the right.

windows ✓ front door

semi-detached storage

chimney house

cellar garden

lawn shutters ✓

drive roof

► Windows may have shutters on the inside or outside.

Unit 31

1 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

iron woollen wax rubber wooden gold steel ✓ concrete cardboard

► a steel pipe

3 a candle

6 a box

1 a fence

4 a medal

7 a railings

2 a tyre

5 a blanket

8 a bridge

2 Answer the questions.

- What shape is a triangle? triangular
- 1 What shape is a tyre? _____
 - 2 How many sides does a rectangle have? _____
 - 3 When people sleep are they vertical or horizontal? _____
 - 4 What shape has four equal sides? a _____
 - 5 What kinds of lines always have the same distance between them? _____ lines
 - 6 What kind of line doesn't have curves? a _____ line

Unit 32

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- pay attention to something you hear c
- 1 look at something or someone quickly _____
 - 2 notice something using your nose _____
 - 3 put your hands or fingers on something _____
 - 4 touch something quickly with your hands or feet _____
 - 5 have a particular flavour _____
 - 6 look at something or someone for a long time _____
 - 7 become impossible to see or find _____
 - 8 hear someone's conversation by accident _____
- a touch
b stare at
c listen to ✓
d tap
e overhear
f smell
g taste
h glance at
i disappear

Unit 33

1 Complete the text with the words from the box in the correct form.

distance scene painting ✓ shade artist ignore hand foreground just

The ► painting by a French (1) _____ illustrates a (2) _____ of peace and happiness. There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (3) _____, and in the background an older woman is watching them. Behind her, you can (4) _____ see one side of a garden gate, and in the (5) _____ an old house, perhaps where they all live. It's obviously a warm day, but they are playing in the (6) _____, to protect the small child from the hot sun. Finally, in the bottom (7) right-_____ corner of the painting, there is a man. He's (8) _____ the mother and daughter, and seems much more interested in what is happening on his right – but that is outside the picture, so we'll never know what fascinates him.

Unit 34

1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.

- Did you hear someone stream? scream
- 1 The police had to stash the door open. _____
 - 2 Don't bear up that paper – we can use it again. _____
 - 3 If you sold that in two, you can put it in this envelope. _____
 - 4 He strayed us with water. _____
 - 5 The little girl was frying because her dog had disappeared. _____
 - 6 He burnt into tears for no reason at all. _____
 - 7 She signed noisily and left the room. _____
 - 8 Don't snake that – it might explode! _____
 - 9 I saw her bragging an enormous box along the street. _____

35 I can talk about crime

A What is crime?

Crime is activity which is **against the law**: for example, if you steal someone's property, you are **committing a crime and breaking the law**. Some offences are only **minor**, e.g. **illegal parking**; but for more serious and especially **violent crimes**, e.g. **killing or attacking someone**, a person could **go to prison** for a long time.

spotlight *crime*

The noun **crime** can be countable and uncountable.

There are many victims of violent crime (U).

*It is a **crime** (c) to avoid paying tax.*

Glossary

against the law	• against the rules of a country. SYN illegal . OPP legal
steal sth PT stole	• take sth belonging to sb else without permission.
PP stolen	
property	• sth that belongs to you (e.g. a computer, jewellery).
commit a crime	• do sth illegal.
break the law	• do sth illegal/against the law. OPP obey the law .
offence	• an illegal activity. SYN crime . (The person is an offender / a criminal .)
minor	• not important. OPP serious .
violent	• using force to hurt sb physically. violence N.
kill sb	• make sb die.
attack sb	• start fighting or hurting sb.
go to prison	• go to a place where criminals have to stay after committing a crime. SYN go to jail .

- 1 Circle the verbs below. Don't circle the other words.

offenceminorkillviolentlawstealcrimeprisoncommitillegal
seriousattackcriminaloffendobey

- 2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- **steal** | take something belonging to someone without permission S
 - 1 **illegal** | against the law
 - 2 **an offence** | a crime
 - 3 **legal** | illegal
 - 4 **kill someone** | attack someone
 - 5 **criminal** | offender
 - 6 **commit a crime** | break the law
 - 7 **prison** | jail
 - 8 **minor crime** | serious crime

- 3 Complete the sentences using a word from the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

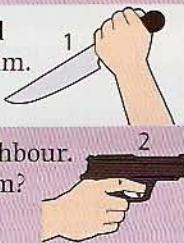
violent serious against break property steal jail minor violence go ✓ attack

- She did something terrible, and I heard that she went to prison.
 - 1 There is a lot of noise in the centre of town at night.
 - 2 A group of boys attacked the man, but fortunately he wasn't badly hurt.
 - 3 The young man bought my bike and sold it in the market.
 - 4 Money was stolen from several houses in the street last night.
 - 5 It was a very dangerous crime; several people had to go to hospital.
 - 6 He committed a serious crime, and he'll probably go to prison for a long time.
 - 7 I've never broken the law.
 - 8 He parked in the wrong place; it was only a small offence, but it's still against the law.

- 4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Types of crime

Crime	The crime of ...	Verb	Criminal
theft	... taking something which belongs to someone else without permission.	He steals cars and sells them.	thief
robbery	... stealing from a person or place, often using violence.	They were planning to rob the bank.	robber
burglary	... entering a building illegally and stealing things from it.	They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.	burglar
shoplifting	... stealing things from a shop.	She stole a skirt from the supermarket.	shoplifter
mugging	... attacking someone in a public place in order to steal from them.	He mugged people for their money late at night.	mugger
assault	... hurting someone physically.	He assaulted/attacked a man. He stabbed ¹ him.	attacker
murder	... killing someone deliberately (= you wanted or planned to do it)	He murdered his neighbour. Why did he shoot ² him?	murderer



spotlight steal and rob

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

Someone has **stolen** my bike. Thieves **stole** €2000 from the shop.

I was **robbed** at the football match. They **robbed** the museum last night.

5 One word in each sentence is wrong. Cross it out.

- Thieves, robbers, murderers, and burglars all steal property.
- 1 Rob, steal, murder, and attacker are all verbs.
- 2 Theft, mug, robbery, and assault are all crimes.
- 3 Shooting, assaulting, stabbing, and breaking into are all ways of attacking people physically.
- 4 Mugging, assault, shoplifting, and murder are all acts of violence.
- 5 Mugger, shoplifter, thief, and burglary are all criminals.

6 Complete the sentences.

- The thief stole \$1000.
- 1 Two robbers broke into the museum and stole three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and stabbed him in the chest.
- 2 The driver killed a man, but it wasn't murder, because he didn't do it deliberately.
- 3 Someone mugged me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would shoot me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
- 4 He will be in prison for the rest of his life for murdering his wife. He bought a gun and stabbed her while she was asleep.
- 5 A thief broke into our house and took our jewellery and cameras.
- 6 The three men robbed that bank because it was in a very quiet area.

7 Test yourself. Look at the crimes, and cover the other three columns. Can you remember the meanings and the verbs?

36 I can describe the justice system Do unit 35 first

A A police investigation

A crime is **reported** to the police, usually by the **victim**.



The police **investigate** it. The victim and **witnesses** tell the police what they know.



The police **may** take **fingerprints**¹, or take photos where the crime took place.

If possible, they **catch** the suspect and **arrest**² him.



If there is enough **evidence**, they will **charge** the suspect and he will **go to court**³.

Glossary

report sth

give information that sth has happened.

victim

a person who has been robbed, injured, etc.

investigate sth

try to find out about sth.

witness

a person who sees sth happen (e.g. a crime or an accident).

may

we use **may** to say that sth is possible. **SYN** **might**.

take place

happen.

catch sb / **PT caught**

find and hold sb.

PP caught

a person who the police think has committed a crime.

suspect

facts, signs, or objects that make you believe sth is true.

evidence

(of the police) say officially that they believe sb has done sth illegal.

1 Circle the correct word.

When a robbery has **taken place**/reported, someone will (1) investigate/report it to the police. (2) Victims/Suspects and witnesses will tell the police what they saw. After that, the police will begin to (3) investigate/charge the crime. They may take photos and take (4) fingerprints/suspects where the robbery (5) took place/caught. They (6) will/may catch the (7) suspect/victim; if they do, they will (8) report/arrest him. If they have enough (9) evidence/victims, they will (10) catch/charge the suspect, and he will have to go to (11) court/the police station.

2 Answer the questions. One question has more than one answer.

- Who has to find the evidence? The police 5 Who is caught? _____
- 1 Who takes fingerprints? _____ 6 Who usually reports the crime? _____
- 2 Who is charged? _____ 7 Who is arrested? _____
- 3 Who investigates the crime? _____ 8 Who sees the crime take place? _____
- 4 Who is hurt by the crime? _____

3

Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder are **tried** by a **judge**¹ and **jury**². At the **trial**, the **prosecution** aims to **prove** that the **accused**³ (or **defendant**) has committed the crime; the **defence** aims to prove he is **innocent**. At the end, the jury decides whether the defendant is **guilty** or not guilty. If he is guilty, he is **sentenced** by the judge. He may **get a fine** or a **prison sentence**.



4 True or false? Write T or F.

- In serious crimes, the judge decides whether the accused is guilty or not. F
- 1 The prosecution defends the accused. _____
- 2 The defendant is sentenced by the judge. _____
- 3 If the jury decides the defendant is innocent, he may go to prison. _____
- 4 With serious crimes, the jury decides what the sentence will be. _____
- 5 The defence aims to prove that the accused did not commit the crime. _____
- 6 If the accused is guilty, he may get a fine. _____
- 7 The judge has to prove whether the defendant is guilty or not. _____
- 8 Trials take place in a court. _____

5 Complete the sentences using the words on the right in the correct form.

- He may get a prison sentence .
- 1 The accused is _____ by the judge and jury.
- 2 The defence must _____ that the accused is innocent.
- 3 The _____ has to show that the accused committed the crime.
- 4 If the _____ is guilty, he may go to prison.
- 5 The guilty person is _____ by the judge.
- 6 A _____ takes place in court.
- 7 A person who is guilty may be _____ a sum of money.

SENTENCE

TRY

PROOF

PROSECUTE

DEFEND

SENTENCE

TRY

FINE

Glossary

- try sb** v ask questions and listen to evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- trial** n an examination of evidence in court to decide if sb has done sth illegal.
- the prosecution** n the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has committed a crime. **prosecute sb** **v**.
- prove sth** v give evidence to show that sth is true. **proof** **n**.
- the defence** n the lawyers who try to prove that the accused person has not committed the crime. **defend sb** **v**.
- innocent** adj If you are **innocent**, you have done nothing wrong. OPP **guilty**.
- sentence sb** v tell sb who is guilty what they will have to do, e.g. go to prison. **sentence** **n**.
- fine** v a sum of money you have to pay if you break a law. **fine sb** **v**.

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

37 I can discuss health issues

A Diseases common among younger people

Nowadays fewer children **suffer from** **infectious diseases**, but the number of children around the world with **asthma** has **increased**. Doctors believe that the **breathing** difficulties of asthma sufferers are often caused by **allergies** to smoke, food, or pollution. There has also been a **dramatic** increase in **obesity** in young people in the last 20 years. Amongst other things, it can **lead to heart attacks, diabetes, and depression**.

1 Write the related adjective.

- infection infectious
1 allergy _____
2 obesity _____
3 depression _____
4 diabetes _____

2 Circle the correct word.

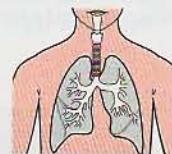
- Breathing problems can be caused by asthma/depression.
1 Diabetes/Asthma is related to sugar in the blood.
2 She has a food allergy/asthma.
3 Diseases/Asthma can be infectious.
4 Instances of asthma have increased/decreased.
5 The increase is dramatic/infectious.
6 He had a heart/lung attack.

3 Complete the sentences.

- If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
1 I can eat most things, but I'm _____ to seafood. It makes me really ill.
2 So many children eat junk food; we have a big problem with _____ in our country.
3 My uncle had a heart _____ last year, but he's fine now.
4 He lost his job and became very _____, but he's happier now.
5 More people _____ from asthma than in the past.
6 He's _____, so he has to test his blood sugar levels regularly.
7 When you _____ in, your _____ fill with air.
8 Obesity can _____ to a number of serious _____.
9 Fortunately there has been a small _____ in numbers of children suffering from infectious diseases.

Glossary

- suffer from sth** have the experience of sth bad.
infectious An **infectious** disease passes easily from person to person. **infection** N.
disease an illness (e.g. skin disease, kidney disease).
asthma a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe.
increase get larger in number or amount. **increase** N. OPP **decrease** V. N.
breathe (in/out) take air into your **lungs** (see picture) and let it out again.

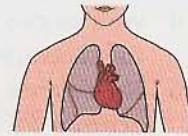


allergy a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat, or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill. **allergic** ADJ.

dramatic sudden and surprising.
obesity the state of being so fat that you are unhealthy. **obese** ADJ.

lead to sth cause or have sth as a result, often sth bad.

heart attack When sb has a **heart attack**, their **heart** (see picture) suddenly stops working normally.



diabetes a disease in which your body can't control the level of sugar in the blood. **diabetic** ADJ.

depression a feeling of being very unhappy (this can also be an illness). **depressed** ADJ.

B Diseases common among older people

Word	Example	Meaning
disabled disability N	My sister is disabled ; she can't walk.	not able to use a part of your body properly.
blind go or be blind SYN lose your sight	My uncle is going blind .	not able to see.
deaf go or be deaf	I'm a bit deaf , so please speak up.	not able to hear.
(have a) stroke	She had a stroke , but she's able to walk again now.	 a sudden illness which affects the brain (see picture) and can stop you walking, talking, etc.
heart disease	He suffers from heart disease .	a serious long-term condition causing problems for your heart.
cancer e.g. skin cancer	He got lung cancer from smoking.	a very serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.
arthritis arthritic ADJ	I can't walk very far because of my arthritis .	a disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.
memory loss	She suffers from memory loss ; she forgets things easily.	a condition in which you lose your ability to remember things.

4 Complete the words.

► lung cancer	4 bl _____
1 m _____ r _____ ss	5 str _____ e
2 a r _____ r _____ tic	6 h _____ rt d _____ s _____ se
3 b r _____ n	7 d _____ s _____ b _____ l _____ ty

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- If someone has heart disease, the problems started some time ago. T
- 1 Arthritis means your fingers, feet, etc. may be painful.
- 2 If you are going deaf, you can't see very well.
- 3 If you lose your sight completely, you go blind.
- 4 People with cancer often have a tumour in their body.
- 5 Heart disease is the same as a heart attack.
- 6 If you suffer from memory loss, you can remember things.
- 7 A stroke attacks the lungs.
- 8 Being deaf and blind are disabilities.

6 Complete the text.

Elderly people usually become more ► **disabled** as time goes by. My grandmother, for example, suffers from (1) a _____, and she can't walk very easily. Last year she started to go a bit (2) d _____, but fortunately she hasn't lost her (3) s _____, so she can still enjoy the TV. Sadly, she suffers from (4) m _____ loss, but that's very common with people of her age. No one in our family has suffered from either (5) c _____ or (6) h _____ disease, however.

7 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

spotlight go + adjective

Go + adjective means 'become', e.g. **go blind**, **go deaf**. You can also use it to describe a change of colour: *His hair went white*. *She stopped breathing and her face went blue*.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went white.

She stopped breathing and her face went blue.

His hair went

38 I can talk about politics

A The British political system

In the United Kingdom (the UK), **elections** are held about every five years. The UK is divided into 646 political areas, called **constituencies**, and in each constituency people **vote for** one person **representing** the **political party** they want to see **in power**. The **politician** with the most votes becomes the **Member of Parliament** (known as an **MP**) for that area. Parliament, therefore, **consists of** 646 MPs, and the party with the **majority** of MPs forms the **government**. The leader of that party also becomes **prime minister**.

Glossary

- election** the time when people choose individuals to speak for them and act for them. **elect** v.
- hold sth** organize an event such as an election.
- constituency** one of the areas into which the country is divided for voting in political elections.
- vote for sb/sth** choose sb/sth in an election. **vote** n.
- represent sb/sth** act officially for people or an organization.
- political party** a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election (e.g. the Labour Party, the Conservative Party).
- in power** in political control of the country.
- politician** a person with a job in politics.
- parliament** the group of people elected to make the laws in a country.
- consist of sth** be formed or made up of sth.
- majority** the largest number or part of sth. **opp minority**.
- government** the group of people in control of a country. **govern** v.
- prime minister** (or **PM**) the leader of the government in some countries.

1 True or false in Britain? Write T or F.

- The British parliament consists of 646 elected representatives. T
- 1 Elections must be held every four years.
- 2 People can only vote for one person in this election.
- 3 Two or three people may be elected in each constituency.
- 4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government.
- 5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister.
- 6 The party with the minority of elected MPs forms the government.

2 Complete the sentences.

- PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
- 1 How often do you hold for parliament?
- 2 Parliament of people from a number of different political .
- 3 In the UK, the Conservative Party was in from 1979 to 1997.
- 4 Who did you for in the last election?
- 5 Politicians the people who elect them.
- 6 She had over 50 per cent of the votes, so a of the people voted for her.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often does your country usually hold elections?
- 2 Which political party is in power at the moment?
- 3 How long have they been in power?
- 4 What is the title of the leader of the party?
- 5 How many people are in parliament?

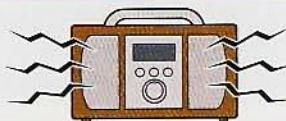
B Political objectives

The government has **announced** that its first **priority** will be education, and today the prime minister will **focus** on the **need for** more young people to go to university.

A new transport **policy** will be announced today, which aims to **persuade** motorists to leave their cars at home.

The government will **face** strong **opposition** to their new **immigration** policy.

An Olympic athlete has been chosen to **launch** the government's new fitness **campaign**.



spotlight *oppose, opposition*

To **oppose sth** means to disagree with something and try to change it. **opposition** **N.** The main political party in parliament, but not forming the government, is called **the Opposition** (used with a singular or plural verb).

Glossary

objective	▪ a thing you are trying to do. SYNS aim, goal.
announce sth	▪ say sth officially and in public. announcement N.
priority	▪ a thing that is important or that you must do before anything else.
focus on sth	▪ give all your attention to sth. focus N.
need for sth	▪ a situation in which you must have or do sth.
policy	▪ a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.
persuade sb (to do sth)	▪ give reasons to make sb agree (to do sth).
face sth	▪ have to deal with a difficult situation.
immigration	▪ the process of coming to live in a country that is not your own (the people are called immigrants).
launch sth	▪ start sth new, especially a campaign or product.
campaign	▪ (often used in politics or business) a plan to do a number of things with a specific aim.

4 Circle the correct answer.

- If you persuade somebody to do something, they do/don't do it.
- 1 If you announce something, you say it in public/private.
- 2 A priority is important/not important.
- 3 If you face a problem, you avoid it/deal with it.
- 4 If you launch something, you start it/finish it.
- 5 Immigration is the process of coming/going to live in a foreign country.
- 6 If you oppose something, you agree/disagree with it.

5 Complete the sentences.

- Helping poor people is a major priority for the government.
- 1 Do you agree with the government's economic _____?
- 2 They've launched a _____ to educate people about the tax system.
- 3 Some MPs already agree with the prime minister, but he still has to _____ others.
- 4 The USA received a lot of European _____ in the early twentieth century.
- 5 The main _____ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
- 6 It's clear that the _____ disagree strongly with the government's policy.
- 7 In his speech, the prime minister will _____ on health issues.
- 8 The government has expressed the _____ for change in their education policy.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

39 I can talk about war and peace

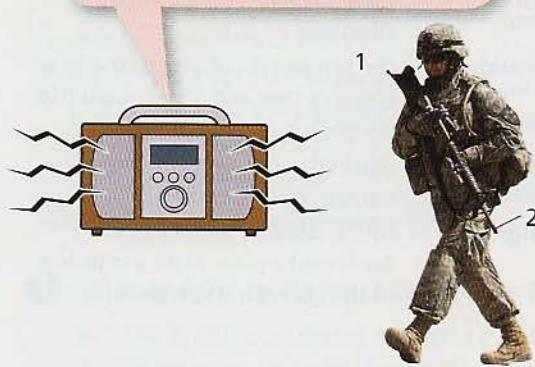
A Conflict

...The bomb exploded in the city centre killing at least a dozen people ...

... Soldiers¹ fought a two-hour gun² battle and captured a number of enemy fighters ...

... The army have captured the airport and are now in control of the situation. Most enemy soldiers have now surrendered.

... If the current crisis gets worse, civil war could break out at any time ...



1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- They're in control d
 - 1 The conflict
 - 2 Soldiers fought
 - 3 Two bombs
 - 4 Soldiers captured
 - 5 The soldiers
 - 6 A dozen
- a surrendered.
 - b the main port.
 - c guns were found.
 - d of the city. ✓
 - e a long battle.
 - f exploded.
 - g lasted many years.

2 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

- They were physically trying to hurt each other. fighting
- 1 They were the men we fought against.
- 2 It's a dangerous and difficult period.
- 3 Many fighters have given up.
- 4 They took control of the city.
- 5 There were a dozen soldiers.
- 6 When did the bomb go off?

Glossary

conflict an angry argument or state of fighting between people or countries. (**War** is fighting between countries or groups using guns, etc.)

bomb a container packed with materials that can burst out with force.

explode burst with force and a loud noise. SYN **go off**. **explosion** N.

dozen twelve or a group of twelve (**half a dozen** = 6).

soldier (see picture) a person who is a member of an army.

fight PT **fought** When people **fight**, they try to hurt or kill each other (sb who fights is a **fighter**). **fight** N.

battle a fight between armies in a war.

capture sb/sth 1 catch and keep sb so they can't leave. 2 take control of sth.

enemy the people your army or country is fighting against.

be in control of sth have the power or ability to deal with sth.

surrender stop fighting and admit you have lost. SYN **give up**.

crisis a time of great danger or difficulty. **critical** ADJ.

civil war a war between groups of people who live in the same country.

break out (used about fighting, wars, fires, etc.) start suddenly.

3 Complete the sentences.

- It has become a serious crisis and could end in war.
- 1 Why did war break?
- 2 The exploded at 10.15.
- 3 Fifty people died in the first of the war.
- 4 There are 50,000 in the army.
- 5 Are they in of the situation?
- 6 The conflict could result in civil

B Compromise

Example

The US and its European allies are both determined to find a solution.

Word and meaning

ally a country that agrees to support another country.
determined having a strong desire to do sth and be successful.

The two countries involved are hoping they can reach an agreement.

involved taking part in sth or connected to sth.
reach an agreement arrive at a decision that both sides agree on.

Leaders from the two main parties are now negotiating, and there is some hope of a peace settlement.

leader a person who is in charge or control of sth.
negotiate talk to sb in order to decide or agree on sth.
peace settlement an official agreement that ends a war (**peace** is a time when there is no war).

The two sides have finally agreed a ceasefire.

side either of two or more groups who are arguing or fighting with each other.
ceasefire an agreement between two sides to stop fighting.

If both sides are willing to compromise, there could be a settlement fairly soon.

willing to do sth happy and prepared to do sth. OPP **unwilling**.
compromise accept less than you want in order to reach an agreement. **compromise** N.

4 Cover the table above. Match 1–7 with a–h.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------|--|
| ► settlement | c | a taking part in something |
| 1 ceasefire | _____ | b having a strong desire to do something |
| 2 ally | _____ | c an agreement to end a war or argument ✓ |
| 3 determined | _____ | d happy and prepared to do something |
| 4 willing | _____ | e accept less than you want |
| 5 negotiate | _____ | f an agreement to stop fighting |
| 6 compromise | _____ | g talk to somebody in order to agree something |
| 7 involved | _____ | h a country that has agreed to support you |

5 Complete the texts.

The civil war has now lasted almost ten years.

► Allies of the two (1) in the conflict have managed to get them to agree to a temporary (2) on several occasions, but they have never been able to get the two (3) of the sides to negotiate a peace (4). It seems they are both (5) to carry on fighting to the bitter end and are completely (6) to compromise.

The two countries (7) in the conflict have finally agreed to come to the negotiating table. Neither will be willing to (8) very much, but there is now at least the possibility that the two leaders could (9) an agreement that will lead to a more lasting (10) settlement.

6 Test yourself. Look at the examples in the table and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

40 I can talk about events in history

Date	Event	Meaning
1066	William of Normandy invaded England and then defeated King Harold in a battle.	invade enter a country with an army to attack and take control of it. invasion N. defeat sb win a battle, vote, game, etc. against sb.
1781	William Herschel discovered the planet Uranus.	discover sth find sth that nobody has found before. discovery N.
1917	The Russian Revolution	revolution action taken by a large group of people to change the government, often using violence.
1923	Turkey became a republic.	republic a country with no king or queen.
1947	India gained independence / became independent.	gain independence become free from control by another country. independent ADJ.
1957	The European Common Market was established.	establish sth start or create an organization or system. establishment N.
1975	Prince Juan Carlos became king of Spain.	prince the son or grandson of a king or queen (a daughter is a princess).
1981	President Sadat of Egypt was assassinated.	president the leader of a country with no king or queen. assassinate sb kill a famous person, often for political reasons. assassination N.
1981	Attempt to assassinate President Ronald Reagan.	attempt the act of trying to do sth difficult (often without success). attempt to do sth v.
1990	Nelson Mandela was released from prison.	release sb allow sb to be free. release N.

1 Cover the table above. Match 1–5 with a–f. Then write the nouns formed from each verb in the third column.

Verb	Meaning	Noun
► discover <u>c</u>	a kill a famous person	► <u>discovery</u>
1 release _____	b enter another country with an army and attack it	_____
2 assassinate _____	c find something that nobody has found before ✓	_____
3 establish _____	d try to do something, often without success	_____
4 invade _____	e start or create an organization	_____
5 attempt _____	f allow somebody to be free	_____

2 Can you complete these sentences about other events in world history?

- President Kennedy was _____ in 1963.
- Bill Gates and Paul Allen _____ the Microsoft Corporation in 1975.
- The 'Velvet _____' took place in Czechoslovakia in 1989.
- American forces _____ the British at the Battle of New Orleans in 1815.
- In 1981 there was an _____ to assassinate Pope John Paul II.
- Argentina gained _____ in 1816 and Brazil became _____ in 1822.

Review: Social and political issues

Unit 35

1 Complete the sentences. Someone who ...

- attacks someone physically is an attacker.
1 commits a crime is a
2 kills someone deliberately is a
3 attacks someone in the street for money is a
4 breaks into a house and steals things from it is a
5 steals your car is a
6 steals things from shops is a
7 steals from a bank is a bank

2 Circle the correct word.

- The man robbed/mugged the post office.
1 She shot/stabbed him with a kitchen knife.
2 You don't go to prison if you obey/break the law.
3 People who commit/break an offence may end up in prison.
4 The two men broke into/jail the museum and stole/robbed some paintings.
5 It was a terrible accident. Don crashed into another car and murdered/killed the driver.
6 You don't see much violence/violent on the streets.
7 Murder is a very serious/minor crime.
8 They attacked/killed the guard, and he's still in hospital.

Unit 36

1 Put the sequence in the correct order.

- a The jury decided that the defendant was guilty.
b The police charged the suspect.
c A crime was committed. 1
d The suspect went to court.
e The police caught the suspect.
f The jury listened to the evidence.
g The police investigated the crime.
h The victim reported the crime.
i The judge sentenced the defendant to two years in prison.

2 Complete the sentences.

- The suspect may be guilty or innocent.
1 The trial takes in a court.
2 The prosecution try to that the defendant committed the crime.
3 The defendant is also called the
4 Often a has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
5 If he is guilty, the defendant may get a or a prison
6 The defendant might be guilty, or he be innocent.
7 When the police investigate a crime, they are looking for , for example, fingerprints.
8 If the police find a suspect, they will them and question them at the police station.

Unit 37

1 What medical problem is being defined?

- A feeling of being very unhappy. depression
- 1 The condition of being too fat.
 - 2 A condition that makes you ill when you touch, breathe, or eat something that doesn't affect other people.
 - 3 A sudden illness affecting the brain; you may not be able to talk afterwards.
 - 4 A medical condition which makes breathing difficult.
 - 5 A condition in which the heart stops working suddenly.
 - 6 A serious illness in which tumours often grow in the body.
 - 7 A disease which causes pain when you bend your arms, fingers, etc.
 - 8 A disease in which the body can't control the level of sugar in the blood.

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- He is / and has been in a wheelchair for years. disabled
- 1 She has suffered asthma for years.
 - 2 He had a heart and died last week.
 - 3 My grandfather is going so I have to shout to him.
 - 4 It's an infectious so he can't mix with other people.
 - 5 The doctor told me to in deeply through my nose.
 - 6 She is allergic some medicines.
 - 7 Obesity can lead heart disease.
 - 8 He suffers from loss and can't remember where he puts things.

Unit 38

1 Match 1–10 with a–k.

- I don't belong to any political j
- 1 The announcement was made by
 - 2 They hold
 - 3 The government will face
 - 4 We need to launch
 - 5 They want to persuade
 - 6 I don't know which party
 - 7 I wouldn't vote
 - 8 She's the Member
 - 9 I don't agree with their immigration
 - 10 The government needs to focus
- a Ben Jones represents.
b a campaign.
c for that party.
d on better health care.
e elections every four years.
f policy.
g the prime minister.
h of Parliament for Hampstead.
i strong opposition to their plan.
j party. ✓
k people to accept the scheme.

2 Which words are being defined?

- the time when people choose politicians to speak and act for them elections
- 1 something that you are trying to achieve o
 - 2 disagree strongly with something o something
 - 3 something that is very important or that you must do before anything else p
 - 4 the group of people elected to make and change laws in a country p
 - 5 a person whose job is in politics p
 - 6 in political control of a country in p
 - 7 be formed or made up of something c of something

Unit 39

1 Answer the questions. Tick (✓) Yes or No.

	Yes	No
► Is a dozen less than ten?		✓
1 Is a soldier a member of the army?		
2 Is a ceasefire at the beginning of a conflict?		
3 When a bomb goes off, is there an explosion?		
4 When two sides reach an agreement, do they usually compromise?		
5 If an army surrenders, does it stop fighting?		
6 Are your enemies on the same side as you?		
7 Are your allies on the same side as you?		
8 Is a civil war between people from different countries?		

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- He's one of our allies. | He's one of our enemies. D
- 1 The two leaders are negotiating. | The two leaders are fighting.
- 2 They arrived at a settlement. | They reached a settlement.
- 3 There are two sides. | There are two leaders.
- 4 There's a crisis in the country. | The situation is critical in the country.
- 5 He wanted to do it. | He was unwilling to do it.
- 6 They captured the enemy leader. | They fought the enemy leader.
- 7 It was a long battle. | It was a long war.
- 8 The war broke out in 1993. | The war started in 1993.

Unit 40

1 Complete the sentences.

- Napoleon Bonaparte was defeated at the Battle of Waterloo in 1815.
- 1 In 1969, Sirhan Bishara Sirhan was sent to prison for the murder of Robert Kennedy in June 1968. He is still there and will never be free.
- 2 Seventy days after Ronald Reagan became President of the United States in 1981, John Hinckley shot to kill him. Reagan survived the attack and lived for another 23 years.
- 3 The French Revolution started in 1789 and lasted for ten years.
- 4 Fidel Castro set up a new Communist government in Cuba in 1959.
- 5 Marie Curie, a Polish-French scientist, discovered radium in the early part of the twentieth century. She died from exposure to radiation in 1934.
- 6 Diana, Princess of Wales, the first wife of Prince Charles, was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
- 7 China became a republic in 1912 after two thousand years of imperial rule.
- 8 Zimbabwe gained independence in 1980.

41 I can understand newspapers

A Newspaper publishing

LIFE AS AN EDITOR

Meet Cyrus Davis, who has spent his **whole** working life in **journalism**. He's now the **editor** of *The Evening Star*, a local **daily** paper **published** in Birmingham. He's been a news reporter on **several** **national** papers, a sports editor, and a **headline** writer. 'The Star' covers **current affairs**, sports, crime, and so on, but one **section** of our paper is about **culture**. It's a good paper, but newspaper sales generally are **declining** because of TV and the internet. It's a bad time for **the press**'.

Glossary

whole	• complete; with no parts missing. SYN entire .
journalism	• the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. (a person who does this is a journalist).
editor	• the person in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. edit v.
daily	• You can get a daily (newspaper) every day, except Sunday.
publish sth	• prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc. publishing N.
several	• more than two, but not many.
national	• connected with all of a country (international = involving two or more countries).
headline	• the title of a newspaper article (<i>see next page</i>).
current affairs	• important political or social events happening now.
section	• one of the parts into which sth is divided.
culture	• activities involving art, literature, music, etc. cultural ADJ.
decline	• become weaker or smaller. decline N.
the press	• newspapers and the journalists who work for them.

1 Circle the adjectives. Don't circle the verbs and nouns.

► international whole edit press declined daily journalism entire culture section national cultural

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- She edits the newspaper. | She's the editor. S
1 I didn't understand the article. | I didn't understand the headline.
2 Which section do you read first? | Which part of the paper do you read first?
3 I'm interested in current affairs. | I'm interested in cultural events.
4 The number of journalists has declined. | The number of journalists has gone up.
5 She read the entire paper. | She read the whole paper.
6 She's worked there for several years. | She's worked there for many years.

3 Complete the sentences.

- The article is in the sports section on page 34.
1 I always turn to the section on c first to read about the latest films and books.
2 My son reads all the papers and is fascinated by the p. He wants to be a j.
3 The paper is p in Denton and sold everywhere in the region.
4 I spent the w morning reading the news about the i situation.
5 Newspaper sales are going up in China, but they're d in Europe.
6 Do you buy a d newspaper?

4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Headlines

FOOTBALL FANS CLASH WITH POLICE

200 AXED CAR WORKERS PROTEST IN CITY CENTRE

Bomb scare in city centre

NURSES DEMONSTRATE OVER TAX CHANGES

THREAT to Hollywood Star

MAN CLAIMS DOG CAN TALK

GOVERNMENT PROMISES HIGHER PENSIONS

GOVERNMENT PLEDGES AID FOR ETHIOPIA

clash with sb fight or disagree seriously with sb about sth. **clash** **N.**

axe sb/sth cut numbers of people, jobs, etc. by a large amount (an axe is a large tool used for cutting wood).
protest say or show that you don't agree with sth, especially in public. **protest** **N.**

scare a situation in which many people are afraid or worried (e.g. bomb scare, health scare, food scare).

demonstrate take part in a public protest for or against sth.
SYN protest. **demonstration/protest** **N.**

threat a statement that sb may kill, hurt, or punish you if you don't do what they want. **threaten** **V.**

claim sth OR claim that say that sth is true without having proof.
claim **N.**

promise (to do) sth say definitely that you will do sth, or that sth will happen. SYN make a promise. **promise** **N.**

pension money paid regularly by the government or a company to sb who has stopped working because of old age (sb who receives a pension is a **pensioner**).

pledge sth make a formal promise to do or give sth. **pledge** **N.**
aid money, food, etc. that is sent to a country or to people to help them (aid v FMU means 'give help').

5 Circle the correct word.

- She claimed/promised to work hard.
- 1 There was a health scare/aid last week.
- 2 Twenty workers were protested/axed.
- 3 Police clashed/aided with protesters.
- 4 They took part in a demonstration/pledge.
- 5 She claimed/promised she was French.
- 6 I receive a company pension/pensioner.
- 7 There was a threat/clash to kill him.

6 Replace the underlined phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

- She went to the public protest. demonstration
- 1 The company made a formal promise to improve services.
- 2 He says that he is the tallest man in the country.
- 3 We're sending money and food to the earthquake zone.
- 4 I had a frightening situation last night – I saw a snake in the garden.
- 5 You should act with others to say that you disagree about price rises.
- 6 My brothers disagreed seriously with the organizers over the arrangements.
- 7 The man said he would hurt me.
- 8 I made a spoken agreement and I won't break it.

7 Test yourself. Look at the headlines and cover the meanings. Can you explain the headlines?

spotlight Verbs and nouns with the same form

There are many words in English in which the base form of the verb and the noun are the same, e.g. *clash, protest, claim, promise, pledge, and aid*.

There was a clash between the protesters and the police.

The police and the protesters clashed.

(See the Vocabulary Building tables on page 202.)

42 I can talk about films

A Film awards

The BAFTAs are the British **equivalent** of the Oscars. The highest **award**, the Academy Fellowship, is a **prize** given for an **individual**'s work and **achievements** during their career; previous **winners** include Hitchcock and Fellini. There are awards for the **outstanding** film of the year, and for special achievement by a British **director**, writer, or **producer** in their first film. There are also awards for best actor and actress in a **leading role** and in a **supporting** role. Achievements are also recognized in **editing**, lighting, and so on.

Glossary

the equivalent of sth	sth that has the same value, amount, meaning, or importance as sth else. equivalent ADJ.
award	• You get or win an award when you do very well in a competition.
prize	• sth of value that you get when you are successful in a competition, race, etc.
individual	• one person who is seen separately from others or a group.
achievement	• sth you have done successfully that was difficult. achieve v.
winner	• a person who wins a competition, game, etc.
outstanding	• extremely good; excellent.
director	• the person who tells actors what to do in a film, play, etc. direct v.
producer	• the person who is responsible for the business side of a film, play, etc. produce v.
leading role	• the most important role (or part) in a film or play (a supporting role is the next most important role).
role	• the part an actor plays (e.g. the role of Julius Caesar).
editing	• the process of deciding which parts of a film to show and in which order. edit v.

1 Complete the words.

► o u t s t a n d i n g	3 p o r t i n g r o	6 a c e v e
1 e v a l e n t	4 i v i d u a l	7 w n r
2 d u c e	5 a r d	8 p z e

2 True or false? Write T or F.

- A producer plays the leading role in the film. F
- 1 An actor directs the film.
- 2 An outstanding film is very bad.
- 3 A BAFTA winner gets an award.
- 4 A leading role is always a man's role.
- 5 An individual is one person.
- 6 A producer edits films.
- 7 It's an achievement to win an award.
- 8 A role is what an actor wears.
- 9 A producer organizes the film's finances.
- 10 A director tells actors how to act.

3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word with the same meaning.

- Who was the business manager of the film? producer
- 1 Was she the person who won?
- 2 Did they get the success they wanted?
- 3 Who played the most important role?
- 4 Who organized the business side of the film?
- 5 Which part did Leonardo di Caprio play?
- 6 Who won the prize for supporting actress?
- 7 Is an Oscar equal in importance to a BAFTA award?
- 8 Was he the first single person to win three awards?

4 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Opinions

Love it or hate it?

An **extraordinary** and **moving** performance by a great leading actor.

A **gripping** and **entertaining** thriller, and full of **drama** – I loved it.

I'm usually a **fan** of Jan Loos, but this **movie** had such a weak **plot**. Very **disappointing indeed**.

Very violent and too much **swearing** – totally **unsuitable** for children.
Disgusting!

spotlight indeed

Use **indeed** after *very* and an adjective or adverb to emphasize a statement.

*The film was very boring **indeed**.*

*I liked it very much **indeed**.*

Glossary

extraordinary very unusual or much better than usual.
SYN **incredible**. OPP **ordinary**.

moving causing strong feelings, especially of sadness.

performance the act of playing a role in a film or play.

gripping very exciting; holding your attention.

entertaining interesting and fun.

drama exciting things that happen; an exciting event.

dramatic ADJ.

fan sb who really likes and is enthusiastic about a person or an activity.

movie (especially in US English) a film.

plot the series of events that form the story of a film, novel, etc.

disappointing not as good as you had hoped.

swearing rude language that may upset people. **swear** v.

unsuitable (for sth/sb) not right or appropriate for sth/sb. OPP **suitable**.

disgusting very unpleasant.

5 Are the adjectives positive or negative? Write P or N.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| ► extraordinary <u>P</u> | 2 ordinary _____ | 4 unsuitable _____ | 6 moving _____ |
| 1 gripping _____ | 3 incredible _____ | 5 disappointing _____ | 7 disgusting _____ |

6 Circle the correct word.

- There's a lot of swear/swearing in the film.
1 It's very funny extremely/indeed.
2 The plot/performance is about three men who have to look after a baby.
3 The drama/movie is on at the Odeon cinema.
4 It was an ordinary/extraordinary film – I really loved it.
5 That film won't be suitable/disgusting for you – it's much too violent.
6 Her performance/fan was really gripping – you must see it.

7 Complete the words in these sentences.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 'Casino Royale' is a really enter _____ film.
- 2 Forest Whitaker gave an extra _____ perf _____ in 'The Last King of Scotland'.
- 3 I thought 'Snakes on a Plane' was very _____ dissap _____ ind _____.
- 4 I'm a f _____ of Cate Blanchett.
- 5 'The Pianist' was very mov _____.

8 ABOUT YOU Replace the underlined names and titles with your own examples of films and actors in the 'About you' column. Compare with another student if you can.

43 I can talk about art and photography

A Painting and drawing



At an art **exhibition**, a **variety** of paintings and **drawings** may be **on display**: for example, **portraits**¹, **landscapes**², and **still lifes**³ (note the plural here is *lifes*, not *lives*). Some artists work in **oils** (**oil paints**)⁴, while others use **watercolours**⁵.

Styles vary too: some **works of art** are **realistic**, others are **abstract**⁶. **Skilled** artists use a range of **techniques** to **create** different **sorts** of effects.

Glossary

exhibition a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public.

variety a number of different types of the same thing. **vary** v.

drawing a picture made with a pencil, pen, etc., but not paint.

on display being shown in a place where people will see it. **SYN on show**.

style the way that sth is painted, drawn, built, etc.

work of art a very good painting, drawing, book, etc. (a really great work of art, e.g. *Mona Lisa* by Leonardo da Vinci, is a **masterpiece**).

realistic showing things as they are. **realism** n.

skilled having the ability and experience to do sth well. **SYN expert**.

technique a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills.

create sth cause sth new to happen; produce sth new.

sort a type or kind.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ watercolours | oil paints D
- 1 a drawing | a painting
- 2 on display | on show
- 3 realistic | abstract
- 4 create | make something new

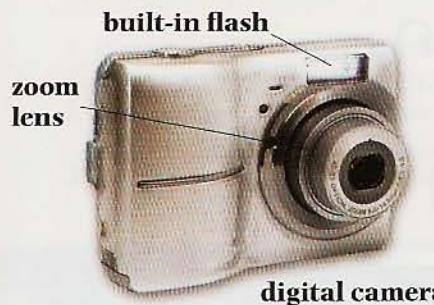
- 5 a sort | a type
- 6 a portrait | a painting
- 7 a still life | a landscape
- 8 skilled | expert
- 9 a work of art | a painting

2 Complete the text.

Picasso is a great artist who worked in a ▶ **variety** of different (1) s , some realistic and others (2) a . He developed a wide range of painting (3) t . He usually painted using (4) o , but he liked to (5) v things and sometimes used (6) w . He loved to paint people, and produced a beautiful (7) p of his mother. Many people believe that his real (8) m was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. In the past, the painting was on (9) d in (10) e all over the world, but it is now permanently in Madrid.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the words?

B Photography



Word	Example	Meaning
out of focus	The photos are out of focus .	not showing things clearly. OPP in focus .
focus on sth	I focused on the girl's face.	change the camera until the image is clear.
transfer sth (from ... to ...)	I transferred the photos from the camera to a laptop.	move sth from one place to another.
develop a film	Could I have this film developed , please?	make pictures from a piece of film using chemicals.
automatic	With an automatic camera, photos are usually in focus.	able to work by itself without direct human control.
studio	She has a studio where she does fashion photography.	a room where a photographer or artist works.

4 Complete the phrases with words from the box.

photographer camera flash a film
 focus ✓ album of film focus lens

- in focus
 - 1 digital
 - 2 zoom
 - 3 amateur
 - 4 out of
- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 5 develop <u> </u> | 6 roll <u> </u> |
| 7 built-in <u> </u> | 8 photo <u> </u> |

spotlight *photography, photograph, etc.*

Photography is the act of **taking pictures** or **photos/photographs**. Someone who does this as a job is a **photographer**; someone who does it as a hobby is an **amateur photographer**.

5 Write the words in the correct order to form sentences.

- I / film / please / roll / have / a / could / of Could I have a roll of film, please?
- 1 can / studio / in / films / develop / she / her
- 2 frame / the / put / photo / I / the / in
- 3 negative / two / please / of / can / prints / have / I / this?
- 4 the / focused / the / in / he / girl / foreground / on
- 5 photographers / automatic / often / cameras / amateur / buy
- 6 you / computer / to / can / the / transfer / pictures / the

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Are you interested in photography? If so, why?
- 2 What kind of camera have you got?
- 3 What features does it have?
- 4 What kinds of problems do you have when you take pictures?

44 I can talk about music

A Musical instruments and musicians



1 trumpet



2 saxophone



3 flute



4 organ



5 keyboard



6 piano



7 violin



8 cello



9 guitar

Franz Liszt was a **composer** but also a great **pianist**.

Chris Martin is the **lead singer** and main **songwriter** in the rock **band** Coldplay.

Mark Elder is the **conductor** of the Hallé **Orchestra**.

spotlight The suffix *-ist*

We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. **guitarist**, **violinist**, **pianist**, **saxophonist**, **cellist**, **organist**. But we say **trumpeter**, **drummer**, and usually **keyboard player**. The word for a flute player is **flautist**: note the change in spelling.

Glossary

musical instrument a thing that is used for playing music.

musician a person who plays a musical instrument.

composer a person who writes music. **compose** v.

lead singer the main singer in a band.

songwriter a person who writes the words and music for a song.

band a number of people who play music together.

SYN **group**.

conductor the person in an orchestra who directs the musicians.

orchestra a large group of musicians who play music together.

1 Complete the words for the musical instruments, then write the person who plays them.

► piano / pianist

4 gu _____ / _____

1 vi _____ / _____

5 sax _____ / _____

2 or _____ / _____

6 ce _____ / _____

3 tr _____ / _____

7 fl _____ / _____

2 Complete the words in the sentences.

► They both play in a rock band _____.

1 My brother plays the violin in an o _____.

2 Noel Gallagher plays the g _____ in the rock b _____ 'Oasis', and his brother Liam is the l _____ singer.

3 Do you play a musical i _____?

4 I don't like modern c _____ such as Bartók and Stockhausen.

5 Paul Simon sings and plays the guitar but is most famous as a s _____.

6 Mike's playing guitar, but who is the keyboard p _____?

7 There are five in the band and they're all good m _____.

8 Sir Georg Solti was the c _____ of several wonderful orchestras.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the instruments?

B Who do you admire? ♪

Music questionnaire

- 1 Write the name of a modern band or **solo artist** that you **admire**. _____
- 2 Has their music been **influenced** by anyone/anything? _____
- 3 Do they write and **record** their own music or play other people's? _____

- 4 Do they often do **live** concerts? Have you seen them play **live**? _____
- 5 What was the last **album** they **released**? _____
- 6 Why does their music **appeal** to you? Is it because of:
a great **voice** / **talented** musicians / lovely **melodies** / good **lyrics**? _____

Glossary

- solo artist** a singer or musician who is not part of a band.
- admire sb** like sb and think they have achieved a lot. **admiration** N.
- influence sb/sth** make a change to the way sb thinks. **influence** N.
- record sth** put music, a film, etc. onto a CD or tape. **recording** N.
- album** a collection of songs (often eight or ten).

release sth put an album onto the market so people can buy it. **release** N.

appeal to sb be attractive or interesting to sb. **appeal** N.

voice the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.

talented having a lot of ability. **talent** N.

melody a series of musical notes in a particular order. SYN **tune** INF.

lyrics the words of a song.

spotlight *living, alive, live*

Living and **alive** mean 'not dead', but **alive** is not used before a noun.

*He's one of the greatest **living** composers. Mozart isn't **alive** today.*

Live ADJ, ADV (sounds like *five*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.

*We saw the band play **live**, then watched a recording of the concert on TV.*

4 Circle the correct answer.

- James Brown isn't **live**/**alive** any longer.
- 1 I like the tune but not the lyrics/melody.
- 2 Is he a **solo**/**single** artist?
- 3 I've never seen the band **live**/**alive**.
- 4 Katie Melua has a great **tune**/**voice**.
- 5 He's one of the best **living**/**alive** songwriters.
- 6 The song has a beautiful **melody**/**voice**.
- 7 His music **appeals**/**influences** to me.

5 Complete the text with words from the box.

albums influenced talented ✓ release appeals solo recorded admire recording

Gilberto Gil is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most ► **talented** songwriters. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was (1) _____ by the bossa nova style of João Gilberto, but he didn't (2) _____ his first album, *Louvação*, until 1967. He travelled in the 1970s, (3) _____ an album in English, and, in 1980, introduced reggae to Brazil with his (4) _____ of the Bob Marley song, 'No woman, no cry'. He has played with many musicians, while continuing his career as a (5) _____ artist. In all he has produced over 40 (6) _____. His music (7) _____ to people because of the rhythm and melodies, but people also (8) _____ him for his work in politics and for social causes.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

45 I can talk about people and places in sport

A People

Word	Example	Meaning	
referee (see picture)	The referee gave out five yellow cards.		the official person in control in some sports (in tennis this is an umpire).
linesman (see picture)	The linesman put his flag up for offside, but I think he was wrong.		a person who helps the referee in some sports. SYN referee's assistant .
manager	José Mourinho has been manager of Porto and Chelsea.		the person in control of a football team (also coach in some countries).
coach	Andy Murray has a new tennis coach.		a person who gives practical teaching to make sb better in a sport.
captain	Fabio Cannavaro was the Italian captain in the 2006 World Cup.		the player who is leader of the team.
spectators	Spectators ran onto the pitch (= the area where the game is played).		people who watch a game (also the crowd).
supporters	Many football supporters travel all over Europe to see their team.		people who regularly watch a team play. SYN fans, support v.
commentator	I thought the commentator was talking rubbish.		a person who describes a game on TV or the radio.

1 Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|---|--------------|-------|
| ▶ football | footballer | 4 | motor racing | |
| 1 | golf | 5 | rugby | |
| 2 | athletics | 6 | skiing | |
| 3 | boxing | 7 | gymnastics | |

2 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ They have a special manager/coach to improve their fitness.
- 1 The captain/manager wears an armband during the game.
- 2 The referee/umpire gave him a red card.
- 3 I lead/support Real Madrid, and go to most of their home games.
- 4 In the men's singles final at Wimbledon, they had a Portuguese referee/umpire.
- 5 There were 40,000 in the ground, of which about 5,000 were Arsenal spectators/supporters.

spotlight Suffix -er and player

We usually add **-er** or **player** to a noun or verb for the person who does a sport: **golfer, swimmer, skier, racing driver, boxer, tennis player, rugby player**. But: **athletics/athlete, gymnastics/gymnast**.

3 Complete the words in the text.

'There was trouble at last week's game. Our ▶ captain got a red card in the second half for arguing with the (1) r, and then the other team scored a goal in the last minute, although the (2) l had his (3) f up for offside. Even the (4) c on the radio thought it was offside, but the ref gave the goal. At the end of the match, some (5) f who were in the (6) c then ran onto the (7) p, and the referee had to have a police escort. In the press conference after the game, our (8) m was still very angry.'

B Places

The Camp Nou **Stadium**, the **ground** of Barcelona football **club**, is the largest stadium in Europe with a **capacity** of 98,800 spectators.

Hohenheim is a motor-racing **circuit** where the German Grand Prix sometimes takes place. One **lap** of the **track** is 4.574 kms.

The Centre **Court** at Wimbledon is famous **worldwide**. Now they have **constructed** the new roof, the All England **Championship** won't be **interrupted** because of rain.

A standard Olympic **swimming pool** is 50 metres **long**, 25 metres **wide**, and has a **minimum depth** of two metres.

spotlight **long**, **wide**, **deep**

Long, **wide**, and **deep** can describe measurements.

The pool is 50 metres long.

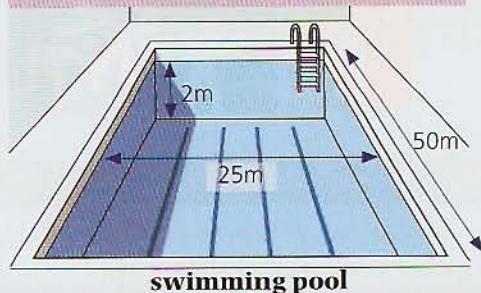
= The **length** of the pool is 50 metres.

The pool is 25 metres wide.

= The **width** of the pool is 25 metres.

The pool is 2 metres deep.

= The **depth** of the pool is 2 metres.



Glossary

stadium a large structure where people sit and watch sport.

ground an area of land where a game is played and people watch.

club A football **club** is the team, the management, and the ground.

capacity the amount or number that a space or container will hold.

circuit an area of land, often in a circle, where a race takes place. **SYN** **track**.

lap one journey around a track.

court a place where tennis, basketball, or badminton are played.

worldwide everywhere in the world. **SYN** **all over the world**.

construct sth build or make sth. **construction** **N.**

championship a competition to find the best player or team in a sport.

interrupt sth stop the progress of sth for a short period of time.

standard normal; average.

minimum smallest possible or smallest allowed. **OPP** **maximum**.

4 Complete the sentences.

► Worldwide means all over the world.

1 The noun from *long* is length.

2 A synonym for *circuit* is track.

3 The noun from *wide* is width.

4 The opposite of *minimum* is maximum.

5 The noun from *deep* is depth.

6 The noun from *construct* is construction.

7 One journey round a track is a lap.

5 Complete the words in each text.

- 1 Liverpool Football ► **Club** is planning to c _____ a new football s _____, with a c _____ of over 60,000.
- 2 The Chinese Grand Prix is raced over 56 l _____ of the Shanghai International C _____. It's the most expensive t _____ ever c _____, costing \$240m.
- 3 The French Open Tennis C _____ at Roland Garros is famous w _____ as the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on clay c _____. s.
- 4 Unfortunately we don't have a s _____ Olympic swimming p _____. The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l _____ and 15 metres w _____. The m _____ d _____ is one metre, and the m _____ is two metres.

46 I can describe sporting events

Do Unit 45 first

A The Olympics



- The first games **took place** in 776 BC, with one **competition**, a race of about 192 metres.
- The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 **competitors taking part** in nine sports: **athletics**¹, **cycling**², **fencing**³, **gymnastics**⁴, **weightlifting**⁵, **shooting**⁶, swimming, tennis, and **wrestling**⁷. By 2004, there were over 11,000 people **competing** in 28 sports.
- Gymnast Larissa Latynina **holds the record** for the most Olympic **medals** (18).
- Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where **professionals** are not allowed to compete.

Glossary

take place (used about a meeting or an event) happen.

competition a situation in which two or more people are trying to win sth or be better than sb (a person trying to win is a **competitor**).

compete v. **competitive** ADJ.

race a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins.

take part in sth join with other people in an activity. SYN **participate**.

medal a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.

professional a person who plays a sport for money as their job. OPP **amateur**.

spotlight record

A **record** is the best performance in something, especially sport.

She **holds the record** for the long jump.
(She has the record.)

He **broke the record** in the 100 metres.
(He set a new record.)

1 Complete the words for sports.

- shooting 2 weight
1 gym 3 fen

- 4 cyc 6 wre
5 ath

2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

- It's a long race/medal.
► It was a hard race/competition.
1 How many people took place/took part?
2 Anyone can take part/participate.

- 3 He broke the record/competition.
4 The race takes place/takes part on Tuesday.
5 Did she win a race/medal?
6 Does she hold/carry the record?

3 Complete the sentences.

- How many sportsmen and women took part in the last Olympics?
1 The 2012 Olympics will take place in London.
2 It's hard for poor countries to compete against rich countries in certain events.
3 A Russian gymnast holds the record for the most Olympic medals won.
4 There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the athletes are professionals.
5 The marathon (just over 42 kms) is the longest race on foot at the Olympics.
6 My uncle won a silver medal in the shooting sport at the 1984 Olympics.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the sports?

B Winners and losers

In a very **one-sided contest**, Roger Federer **defeated** Andy Roddick 6–4, 6–0, 6–2 in the **semi-final** of the Australian Open to go through to his tenth grand slam **final**. Federer won the first set quite easily, then broke Roddick's **resistance** in the second with some **brilliant** tennis. Afterwards, Roddick was very **critical of** his own **performance**, but **praised** his **opponent** for some **outstanding** tennis. Federer is now clearly the **favourite** to take his third Australian Open, and tenth grand slam **overall**. This would put him just one behind Rod Laver, a tremendous **achievement** for someone who is still only 25.

spotlight defeat

As a verb, to **defeat sb** means to be stronger or better than somebody in a game, fight, etc. **SYN beat sb.**

Italy defeated Wales 2–0 in the last match they played.

As a noun, a **defeat** is an occasion when you **don't** win something.

*We won our first match, then followed it with three **defeats**.*

Glossary

one-sided	• If a game is one-sided , one person or team is much better than the other.
contest	• an activity between two players or teams to see who is best.
semi-final	• one of two games to decide who plays in the final .
final	• the last game or match in a competition.
resistance	• the action of trying to stop sth happening or stop sb doing sth. resist v.
brilliant	• very good, clever, or skilful. SYN outstanding .
critical of sth/sb	• saying what is wrong with sth/sb. criticize sth/sb v.
performance	• the way in which sb plays or does sth. perform v.
praise sb/sth	• say that sb/sth is very good. praise n.
opponent	• a person who plays against you in a sport or competition.
favourite	• the person or team who is expected to win. OPP outsider .
overall	• including everything; in total.
achievement	• a thing that you have done successfully through hard work or skill. achieve sth v.

5 Complete the sentences.

- The noun related to **perform** is performance. 4 The noun related to **praise** is _____.
- 1 The noun related to **achieve** is _____.
- 2 The verb related to **critical** is _____.
- 3 The noun related to **resist** is _____.
- 5 **Outstanding** is a synonym for _____.
- 6 An **outsider** is the opposite of a _____.
- 7 **Beat sb** is the same as _____.

6 Complete the sentences.

- We were defeated in the semi-final, which was very disappointing.
- 1 Nadal won the match in the end, but it was a great _____ between them.
- 2 He was the winner in 1998, 2003, and again in 2008, so that's three titles _____.
- 3 Bjorn Borg won Wimbledon five times, which is a fantastic _____.
- 4 He was the _____, so we expected him to win, but it was a very one-_____ contest.
- 5 Tiger Woods aims for perfection and is always very _____ of his own performance.
- 6 Who will her _____ be in the final? ~ I don't know. It depends on the other _____-final.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

47 I can talk about books

A Types of book

I read a huge amount. As an editor, I'm always using **reference books** such as dictionaries, **encyclopedias**, **manuals**, catalogues, and so on. But I read a lot for **pleasure** too, and I particularly like **poetry**. At home all my books are arranged in **alphabetical** order (I know that's a bit strange!). I've got loads of **novels**, **murder mysteries**, **science fiction**, etc. But there is **non-fiction** as well; I read quite a lot of **biographies**. My husband says I'm book-crazy.

Glossary

reference book	▪ a book you use to find a piece of information.
encyclopedia	▪ a book or set of books that gives information about many different subjects, arranged in alphabetical order.
manual	▪ a book that tells you how to do or use sth such as a car or a computer.
catalogue	▪ a complete list of things you can buy or see somewhere.
pleasure	▪ a feeling of enjoyment.
poetry	▪ poems in general (a poem is a piece of writing arranged in short lines which express thoughts and feelings through sound and rhythm).
alphabetical	▪ listed in the same way as the alphabet : A, B, C, etc.
novel	▪ a book that tells a story about people or events that are not real.
mystery	▪ a story in which the events are only explained at the end (e.g. a murder mystery).
science fiction	▪ books about events that take place in the future, often involving travel in space. SYN sci-fi INF.
non-fiction	▪ books about real facts, people, events, etc. OPP fiction.
biography	▪ the story of sb's life written by someone different (an autobiography is the story of sb's life written by that person).

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

catalogue ✓ murder mystery autobiography manual
reference book encyclopedia novel biography sci-fi

Fiction

Non-fiction

catalogue

2 Complete the sentences.

- A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
- 1 If you don't know the date of the French Revolution, look it up in an _____.
- 2 Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful _____.
- 3 Dictionaries are a kind of _____ book.
- 4 What kind of books do you read for _____ in the evenings?
- 5 Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder _____ at the moment.
- 6 What's the tenth letter of the _____? ~ It's 'J'.
- 7 Did David Beckham write his life story himself? ~ Yes, it's his _____.
- 8 If you don't know how your camera works, you should look in the _____.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

B Choosing a book

Booksellers' survey: how did you choose the last book you read?

The **title** and front **cover** just attracted my **attention**.

I was **browsing** in a bookshop. I just picked up a **paperback** that looked interesting.

A recommendation by a friend – he said it was very **readable** and **well written**.

It was a **gift**, but I like the **author** so I was really pleased.

I **looked through** the first **chapter** – it looked **fascinating**.

Glossary

title	the name of a book, play, film, etc.
cover	the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
attract sb's attention	If sth attracts your attention , it interests you so that you want to look at it.
browse	spend time pleasantly in a shop looking at things.
paperback	a book with a thick paper cover (a hardback has a hard cover).
readable	easy or interesting to read.
gift	a thing that you give to sb, e.g. for their birthday. SYN present .
author	the writer of a particular book, play, etc.
look through	read sth quickly. SYN skim sth .
sth	
chapter	one of the parts into which a book is divided.
fascinating	very interesting.

spotlight Compound adjectives with **well**

There are many adjectives consisting of **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well informed** (= knowing a lot about a subject), **well known** (= famous).

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence ending.

- Who is the **author** **gift** ?
1 The cover attracted my **chapter** **attention** .
2 The author was **well known** **well written** .
3 I read the second **title** **chapter** .
4 The book looked very **readable** **well informed** .
5 I wanted the cheaper one, so I bought the **hardback** **paperback** .
6 I was in a bookshop the other day, just **attracting** **browsing** .

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written a reference book. He's not ► **well** known, but he's a good (1) a His book might attract a lot of (2) a because it's called 'How to make a lot of money by doing very little' – isn't that a great (3) t ! It's being published in hardback and (4) p I read the first (5) c about selling things on the internet, and it's really (6) f – I couldn't put it down. On the front (7) c there's a picture of my cousin in bed with his laptop; it's a bit silly. But it's a funny book and it's (8) well w

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What kind of books do you find most fascinating?
- 2 What kind of reference books do you use most often?
- 3 Do you enjoy browsing in bookshops?
- 4 Are you ever attracted to a book just by the cover?
- 5 Do you have more paperbacks or hardbacks? Why?

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. What are the words?

48 I can describe festivals



'LA TOMATINA': THE WORLD'S BIGGEST TOMATO FIGHT

The event takes place every August in Buñol, Spain. People come from all over the world to **participate** in this huge social **occasion**, which includes music, **parades**, dancing, and **fireworks**. The main event is a tomato fight in which 100 **tons** of over-ripe tomatoes are **thrown** in the streets. Trucks bring the tomatoes into the town, and the fight begins; it ends after exactly one hour. No one is very sure how or why this **festival** started!

CHERRY BLOSSOM FESTIVAL, JAPAN

Cherry **blossom** is the national flower of Japan. And as spring **approaches**, people make special trips to various viewing sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower. The trees are sometimes **lit up** at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, **parades**, folk music, religious ceremonies, and a beauty **contest**.



THE RIO CARNIVAL ('CARNAVAL')

One of the most **spectacular** **entertainments** in the world, Carnival is a **wild** four-day celebration of music, dance, and food and drink, all over Rio. The event **means a lot** to the people from the poorest **neighbourhoods**, who spend months in preparation. It is an opportunity for the whole **community** to go out and **have fun** together. It ends with the Samba Parade, for which the performers **dress up** in the most **striking** **costumes**.

spotlight **festival, carnival, parade**

A **festival** is a day or days when people celebrate something, often a religious event. A **carnival** is like a festival with people dancing and playing music in the streets. A **parade** is an organized event in which people move (**parade v**) through the streets, often on special vehicles, wearing **costumes** (special clothes), and playing music.

Glossary

participate (in sth)	• become part of an activity. SYN take part in sth.
occasion	• a time when sth happens.
fireworks	• objects that burn or explode in the sky with colours and noise.
ton	• a unit for measuring weight in Britain (one ton = 1,016 kilograms).
throw sth	• use your hand and arm to send an object through the air.
blossom	• a flower or mass of flowers especially on fruit trees in spring.
approach sb/sth	• come nearer to sb/sth.
light sth up	• make sth bright with light. SYN illuminate sth.
contest	• a competition to see who is the best (e.g. a beauty contest).
spectacular	• very impressive; large, beautiful, and often with lots of colour.
entertainment	• an activity that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. theatre, film, music (the people who entertain you are entertainers).
wild	• exciting and enjoyable.
mean a lot to sb	• be very important to sb.
neighbourhood	• an area of a town and the people who live there.
community	• all the people who live in an area or town.
have fun	• enjoy yourself.
dress up	• put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event.
striking	• very attractive in a way that causes people to notice.

1 Find one spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- The event is really designed to serve the local community. community
- 1 It was really amazing to see the trees iluminated at night. iluminated
 - 2 Carneval takes place once a year, usually during the holiday season. Carneval
 - 3 As we aproached the centre, we saw that the entertainment had started. aproached
 - 4 It was a really espectacular evening, which we will never forget. espectacular
 - 5 The fastival takes place every three years. fastival
 - 6 The display of fireweorks was absolutely amazing. fireweorks
 - 7 They picked tuns of grapes. tuns
 - 8 Spring is the time when people make special trips to see the trees in blossum. blossum

2 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- The trees are covered in e. a contest.
- 1 Fireworks _____ b flowers at the entertainers.
 - 2 The crowd threw _____ c lit up the night sky.
 - 3 The festival means _____ d fun together.
 - 4 Everyone just wants to have _____ e blossom. ✓
 - 5 People dress up in _____ f take part in the event.
 - 6 Lots of people want to _____ g occasion.
 - 7 There is even a beauty _____ h a lot to the community.
 - 8 It was a very wild _____ i special costumes.

3 Replace the word or phrase in italics with one which has a similar meaning.

- We had a *good time* watching the carnival parade. fun
- 1 How many people *took part* in the event? _____
 - 2 We were going to a party so we decided to *put on special clothes* for it. _____
 - 3 The church is usually *lit up* at night. _____
 - 4 She was wearing a *very attractive and unusual* dress. _____
 - 5 It's a great *time* because everyone goes onto the streets. _____
 - 6 The festival is an important event in the *local area where I live*. _____

4 Complete the questions.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY

- 1 What is the most important f _____ or c _____ in your country? _____
- 2 Do people p _____ through the streets as a part of it? _____
- 3 Do you have other kinds of e _____ during it? _____
- 4 Have you ever t _____ p _____ in a parade? If so, what did you do? _____
- 5 Have you ever d _____ u _____ in a special costume for a festival? If so, what did you wear? _____
- 6 Are there any special o _____ when you have f _____ at night? _____
- 7 Do these different events m _____ a lot to you personally? _____
- 8 Would you like to p _____ in any of the festivals on page 124? Which one(s) and why? _____

5 **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 4, or ask another student.

6  Test yourself. Cover the words in the glossary and look at the meanings. Say the words.

Review: Media and entertainment

Unit 41

- 1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

- I spent the ~~whose~~ day waiting for the electrician to come. whole
- 1 The president received many ~~death~~ threads during his life. death
- 2 Sales of newspapers have ~~reclined~~ over recent years. declined
- 3 I worry a lot about ~~bomb~~ stares where I live. bother
- 4 Are you interested in ~~currant~~ affairs? current
- 5 I saw a huge demonstration today; people were ~~protecting~~ about the war. protesting
- 6 Do you usually get a ~~dairy~~ paper? ~ Yes, I get *The Times*. newspaper

- 2 One word is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

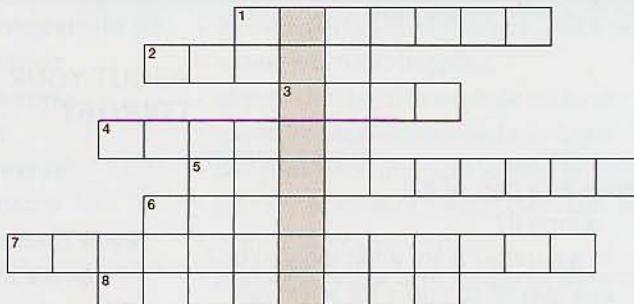
cultural editor pension made ✓ journalist claims headline

1

- I ~~haven't~~ a promise to help her, so I will do it. made
- 1 I enjoy all sorts of events, such as exhibitions and concerts. cultural
- 2 I think he must receive a ~~because~~ he's nearly 70. pension
- 3 I saw a strange newspaper the other day: 'Man bites dog'. headline
- 4 She's in charge of the local newspaper; I believe she's ~~been~~ the for three years. editor
- 5 The government ~~that~~ it can cut crime by 20 per cent this year, but I don't believe it. claims
- 6 My cousin's a ~~newspaper~~; he writes articles about current affairs. journalist

Unit 42

- 1 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?



- 1 the process of deciding which parts of a film to show.
2 film
3 the part an actor plays
4 the person who comes first in a competition
5 extraordinary; very much better than usual
6 the series of events that form the story of a film
7 not as good or interesting as you had hoped
8 rude language that may upset people

The letters in the grey squares make the word SCREEN

Unit 43

1 Which words or phrases are being defined?

- an exhibition of paintings: a collection of paintings which are on display to the public
- 1 an _____ camera: one which works by itself
- 2 an _____ painting: a painting that shows the artist's feelings rather than showing the exact appearance of people or things
- 3 a _____: a place where an artist or photographer works
- 4 _____ focus: not able to be seen clearly
- 5 a _____ drawing: one that shows things as they really are
- 6 a _____: a painting or drawing of the countryside
- 7 a _____: a type or kind
- 8 a _____ artist: an artist who has a lot of ability and experience

Unit 44

1 Complete the words. Then write P next to those that are people.

- r e c o r d ► v i o l i n i s t P
- 1 c o n d u c t o r _____
- 2 l i n e d s i n g e r _____
- 3 k a y b o a r d p l a y e r _____
- 4 c o m p a s s r _____
- 5 f l o o t _____
- 6 b a n d _____
- 7 t r a m p e t _____
- 8 m a l e d _____
- 9 f l o o t r i s t _____
- 10 g a t e r i s t _____
- 11 s u x p h o n e _____
- 12 s a l e r i s t _____

Unit 45

1 Tick (✓) the two correct words or phrases.

- five thousand spectators commentators supporters
- 1 a football ground stadium circuit
- 2 a tennis lap court umpire
- 3 the new spectator coach manager
- 4 a motor-racing track ground circuit
- 5 a football club referee umpire
- 6 a worldwide deep standard pool

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- The other members of the team chose him as their captain.
- 1 They're _____ a new stadium. It will be finished next year.
- 2 The ground has a _____ of 50,000.
- 3 I watch my team every week. I've _____ them for 25 years.
- 4 Alonso completed the last _____ of the circuit in one minute and 37 seconds.
- 5 The game was _____ for 25 minutes because the lights went out.
- 6 A _____ of 28,000 watched the last game.
- 7 Who won the Drivers' World _____ last year?
- 8 The _____ of a football pitch is about 100 metres; the _____ is about 50.

Unit 46

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

- It was an outstanding f a overall
1 About thirty took part b of the performance.
2 It was a very one- c the record.
3 He was critical d place on Tuesday.
4 He still holds e in yesterday's race.
5 She's the favourite f to win.
6 She's in the semi- g performance. ✓
7 The game takes h sided contest.
8 He's a difficult i final
9 She won five titles j opponent

Unit 47

1 Tick the correct column.

	Yes	No
► If a novel is readable, it means that you have definitely read it.	✓	
1 Reference books are useful when you want to get information.		
2 There is often a picture on the cover of a book.		
3 A well-known person is someone only a few people have heard of.		
4 An encyclopedia is arranged in alphabetical order.		
5 If you are browsing in a shop, you definitely won't buy anything.		
6 You'll find novels in the non-fiction section of a bookshop.		
7 An autobiography is someone's life story, written by someone else.		
8 A manual is something most people read for pleasure.		

Unit 48

1 One word or phrase is missing from each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end. Use words from the box in the correct form.

wild festival community ✓ throw mean striking parade take part neighbourhood

- Anyone in the whole / can participate. community
1 Everyone through the main streets in the town.
2 The people in the where I live are very friendly.
3 It's a two-day, which we have every year.
4 It was quite a party; we had great fun.
5 Do you ever in parades?
6 I enjoy the carnival: it a lot to me.
7 She wore a really dress with gold flowers on it.
8 We all had to a ball and try to hit the moving object.

49 I can get through exams

A guide to exam success

- Follow the invigilator's instructions. Don't take any forbidden items into the room, or try to communicate with other candidates. You will be disqualified for cheating.
- Before you start, read the paper carefully. Don't waste time copying the questions; the examiner knows what they are.
- Planning is essential in successful writing. Devote 5–10 minutes to making notes.
- Have a positive attitude. It's your chance to show what you know. And it will be a relief when it's all over in a few hours.

Glossary

success	the achievement of sth you have wanted. succeed v.	paper	the written questions in an exam.
follow instructions	do what sb tells you to do.	carefully	If you read sth carefully , you read slowly and pay attention.
invigilator	the person watching students in the exam room.	examiner	the person who will read and mark the candidate's answer.
item	a thing or an object.	planning	the act or process of making plans for sth.
communicate with sb	talk to or make signs to sb.	essential	completely necessary and important in a particular situation.
candidate	a person taking an exam.	devote time to sth/sb	give proper time to sth/sb.
disqualify sb	officially stop sb from taking part in sth because they have broken a rule.	attitude	the way you think, feel, or behave.
cheat	do sth dishonest to get an advantage for yourself (a person is a cheat N).	relief	the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops. relieved ADJ.

1 Circle the correct word.

- Read the planning/paper carefully.
- 1 The examiner/invigilator watches students during the exam.
 - 2 What's the best way to achieve relief/success in the exam?
 - 3 If you want to succeed/cheat, you should study hard.
 - 4 A positive attitude/candidate will help you be more successful.
 - 5 Students should communicate/follow the instructions they hear.
 - 6 If you cheat, you will be disqualified/relieved.

2 Complete the words in the text.

My brother has very little ► success in exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative (1) a_____ to them. He's so nervous that he can't follow the (2) i_____ given by the (3) i_____. He once forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket; he was accused of (4) c_____ and was (5) d_____ for taking a forbidden (6) i_____ into the exam room. My mother gives him lots of advice, though; she tells him not to panic and to read the (7) p_____ slowly before he writes anything, and that it's (8) e_____ that he plans his answers (9) c_____. However, he never (10) d_____ enough time to the (11) p_____, so the (12) e_____ must find his answers very difficult to understand. In our house, it's always such a (13) r_____ if he passes an exam.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

50 I can describe university life

A Academic life

Word	Example	Meaning
academic	I enjoy academic subjects like history.	connected to education, especially school or university.
undergraduate	Undergraduates usually do a three-year course.	a university student studying for their first degree.
graduate	She's an Oxford graduate. He graduated last year.	a person who has finished their degree (when they finish, they graduate v).
tutor	You can ask your tutor for advice on your work.	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students.
professor	She's a professor of law.	the highest level of teacher in a university.
lecture	I went to an interesting lecture on Italian politics.	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject (the person is a lecturer n).
seminar	Are you going to the seminar this morning?	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a tutor.
debate	We had a great debate.	a formal discussion.
attend sth	You have to attend lectures.	go to sth, or be present at sth.
take notes	Don't forget to take notes.	write words quickly to help you remember sth.
read widely	Try to read widely.	read a lot of different kinds of books.
write a thesis	I'm writing a thesis on global warming.	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject.
do research	You do research for a PhD.	do a long and careful study of a subject.
continuous assessment	We don't have exams; it's all continuous assessment.	a way of judging students by looking at the work they do during the year.

1 Tick (✓) the words that are people.

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|------------|
| ► professor ✓ | ► assessment ✗ | |
| 1 thesis | 4 graduate | 7 seminar |
| 2 debate | 5 undergraduate | 8 research |
| 3 lecture | 6 tutor | 9 lecturer |

2 Complete the text.

If you are an ► undergraduate at university in Britain, you spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to (1) a a lot of (2) s and (3) l and take (4) n In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a (5) t You have to read (6) w and you may have to express your opinions on a range of (7) a topics. In many courses, there is continuous (8) a : the marks you get for your essays go towards your final results, after which, if you are successful, you (9) g

3 Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

B Student life

Advice for new students

• In Britain, many university students live **away from home**. This means you get the **freedom** and **opportunity** to meet new people. Most students choose to live in a **hall of residence** in their first year, where you are less likely to be **homesick** or lonely.

• Student life is all about learning to **manage** your money: **tuition fees**, **loans**, bills, accommodation fees, etc. You may be able to get a **scholarship**, and many students find part-time jobs to help pay the bills.

• At university, you can be **flexible** about when you study, but be sure to get out of bed **in time** for lectures, do your work **on time**, and plan your **revision** period before exams.

Glossary

away from home	• in a different place from your home. OPP at home .
freedom	• the right or ability to say or do what you want.
opportunity	• the possibility to do sth that you want to do. SYN chance .
hall of residence	• (in universities) a building where students live.
homesick	• sad because you are away from home and you miss it.
manage sth	• be in control of sth.

fees	• money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer, etc. (tuition fees are the money that you pay to be taught).
loan	• If you take out a loan , you borrow money, usually from a bank.
scholarship	• money that an organization gives sb to help them study.
flexible	• able to change easily. flexibility N.
revision	• the process of studying sth again to prepare for an exam. revise V.

4 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

revision on time in time manage flexible✓
opportunity freedom homesick

- I can see you any day this week – I can be **flexible**.
- 1 I had the _____ to meet the president.
- 2 The train was _____, fortunately.
- 3 I think children have too much _____.
- 4 Do lots of _____ before the exam.
- 5 I don't know how to _____ my money.
- 6 I got there _____ to see Joel before he left.
- 7 I lived abroad for a year but I was _____ and I missed my family.

spotlight *in time, on time*

If you are **in time** for something, you arrive before or at the correct time. If you are **on time** for something, you arrive at exactly the correct time.

*He arrived **in time** for the lesson.*

(= before the lesson started.)

*The lesson started **on time**.*

(= at the correct time.)

5 Complete the questions. Then write your answers, or ask another student.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 Do students usually live at home, or a _____ from home? _____
- 2 Do most students live in halls of r_____? _____
- 3 Do they have to pay t_____ fees? _____
- 4 Do they have to take out l_____ to pay the bills? _____
- 5 Can they get a s_____ to help pay for their studies? _____
- 6 Would you like the c_____ to study abroad? _____

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Can you remember the words?

51 I can apply for a job

Applying for a job with FamAid UK

Wherever you are **based**, you can apply for any advertised **vacancy**.

Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually be expected to have a **valid** UK work permit. For jobs outside the UK, the local FamAid office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will be **acknowledged automatically** by email.

Selection process

If we would like you to **attend** an **interview**, we will **contact** you. At that time, and if **required**, we will also **assess** other skills you may have or need.

If you are not successful, we will contact you and, wherever possible, **give** you **feedback**.

If you are the successful **candidate**, we will offer you the position, but this is **subject to** satisfactory **references**. We shall also **request** **confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

Glossary

apply for sth	ask for sth in writing (often a job or course). application N.	process	a series of things that are done for a particular reason.
be based somewhere	If you are based in a place , that place is the centre for your work.	interview	a meeting in which sb is asked questions to find out if they are suitable for a job, course, etc. (the person who asks the questions is an interviewer). interview sb v.
vacancy	a job that is available for sb to do.	contact sb	phone or write to sb.
work permit	an official document which says you are allowed to work.	assess sth/sb	decide on the quality or ability of sth/sb. assessment N.
valid	If sth is valid , it is legally acceptable and can be used.	give sb feedback	give sb advice or criticism about how they have done sth.
advise sb	tell sb the best thing to do. SYN give sb advice (advice N, U).	candidate	a person who makes a formal application for a job.
acknowledge sth	let sb know that you have received sth from them. acknowledgement N.	reference	a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job (a person who writes this is a referee).
automatically	without any human control.	confirmation	a statement in writing which says that sth is true or accurate. confirm v.

spotlight Formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example: **attend sth** (= go to/for sth), **require sth** (= need sth), **request sth** (= ask for sth), **subject to sth** (= depending on sth), **position** (= job), and **shall** (= will). The words in bold are more formal than the words in brackets, which we would normally use in spoken English.

1 Cover the glossary and complete the table.

Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
advise	► advice	confirm	
apply		acknowledge	
assess		interview	

2 There is a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- My old boss said he would be my reference. My old boss said he would be my referee.
- 1 They said they'd contact to me.
 - 2 Is she applying a job?
 - 3 Have you got a work permission?
 - 4 The company is based on Tokyo.
 - 5 He gave me some good advices.
 - 6 She gave me foodback after the interview.
 - 7 I have to confirimate it in writing.
 - 8 If you apply for a job, it's quite a long processment.

3 Replace the underlined words with a more formal word or phrase with the same meaning.

- We will contact you as soon as possible. shall
- 1 Has the company asked for references?
 - 2 They offered me the job on Thursday.
 - 3 I went for an interview last week.
 - 4 If you need more information, please contact me.
 - 5 We're going to give him the job, depending on satisfactory references.

4 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- You can't use this visa any longer – it's not valid.
- 1 I work in lots of places, but I'm _____ in Bristol.
 - 2 She was angry because they didn't _____ that they had received her letter.
 - 3 He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written _____ yet.
 - 4 They said they would _____ me by phone when they've made a decision.
 - 5 You don't need to ask for confirmation; they will reply _____.
 - 6 They interviewed four other _____ for the job as well as me.
 - 7 Val wrote to the company for a job, but there are no _____ at the moment.
 - 8 I hope they'll _____ me feedback after the interview.
 - 9 He wants to _____ for the job, but he still has to fill in the _____ form.
 - 10 You have to do tests and have several interviews; it's quite a long _____.

5 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- 1 What jobs have you applied for in the past?
- 2 How many interviews have you had?
- 3 Have any interviewers given you feedback after the interview?
- 4 How many times have you been the successful candidate?
- 5 Who were your referees?
- 6 Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, where?

6 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings and other parts of speech?

52 I can describe jobs

A Careers

Careers 4 U advertises jobs across a range of market **sectors**. Register by email now and you can be first in line to apply for **jobs** as they appear. Just complete the following:

Please select any two sectors in which you have **experience** and/or **qualifications**.

- engineering**
- management**
- military**
- retail**
- training**
- finance**
- publishing**
- recruitment**
- manufacturing**

Spotlight career, job, profession

A **career** is the series of jobs you have in a particular area, e.g. a **career** in **publishing**. A **job** is any work you do to earn money, e.g. being a waiter, teacher, etc. A **profession** is a job with a high level of training and/or education, e.g. *the medical/teaching profession*.

Glossary

- sector** a part of the business activity of a country
(**public sector** = controlled by the government; **private sector** = controlled by private companies).
experience the things that you have done in your life.
qualifications the exams you have passed or courses you have finished.
engineering the activity of designing roads, railways, bridges, etc.
military connected with soldiers, or the army, navy, and air force.
training the activity of teaching people the skills they need for a job. **train sb** v.
publishing the business of producing and selling books, magazines, etc. **publish sth** v.
manufacturing the business of producing goods in factories. **manufacture sth** v.
management the control of a business or organization. **manage sb/sth** v.
retail selling goods to people directly in shops, on the internet, etc.
finance the activity of managing money.
recruitment the business of finding people for job vacancies. **recruit sb** v.

1 What sector do these people work in?

- I produce books and then we sell them. publishing
- 1 I teach people their jobs. education
 - 2 I'm a soldier. military
 - 3 I sell clothes. retail
 - 4 I design motorways. engineering
 - 5 I produce cars. manufacturing
 - 6 I'm the boss of a company. management
 - 7 I control the money in our business. finance
 - 8 I fill job vacancies in companies. recruitment

2 Complete the words in the text.

I've just left university and I'm hoping to have a ► **career** in the private (1) s _____, and eventually I'd like to be in (2) m _____ and have my own business. I had a couple of jobs in small companies in my holidays, so I have a little (3) e _____ . I'm hoping to work for a large company to start with; they do a lot of (4) t _____ , and I'll be able to get some extra (5) q _____ too. My father's in the legal (6) p _____ , but for some reason, he wants me to have some experience in the (7) m _____ as a soldier. I've no idea why, though.

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the website again. Which sectors do you have experience or qualifications in?

B Jobs

Job	What does he/she do?	Glossary
plumber	 installs and repairs water pipes, taps, central heating, baths, etc.	install sth put in some equipment so that it is ready to use.
mechanic	 repairs engines, especially in vehicles.	vehicle e.g. car, bus, lorry.
electrician	 installs, connects, or repairs electrical wiring.	electrical of or about electricity
carpenter	 makes or repairs parts of a building and other objects made of wood.	object a thing that can be seen or touched but is not alive.
nanny	 takes care of / cares for children in their own home.	take care of / care for sb/sth look after sb/sth.
travel agent	 makes travel arrangements for people.	make arrangements for sb/sth make plans or preparations for sb/sth.
estate agent	 buys and sells houses or land for people.	land an area of ground; an area used for a special purpose.
importer	 imports goods.	import sth buy goods from another country to sell in your own country. opp export sth.
priest	 performs religious ceremonies in some religions.	
civil servant	 works for the civil service, i.e. all government departments except the military.	i.e. in other words; that is (used when you are explaining or defining sth).
sales rep / representative	 travels to different places and sells the products of a particular company.	product a thing that people make or grow in order to sell.

4 Cover the table above. Are these sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- An importer exports goods to sell. F
- 1 An estate agent sells holidays. _____
- 2 A carpenter makes wooden objects. _____
- 3 A civil servant works for a company. _____
- 4 A priest conducts religious ceremonies. _____
- 5 A mechanic can repair vehicles. _____
- 6 An electrician fixes electrical wiring. _____
- 7 A plumber can fix your central heating. _____

5 Cross out one word which is wrong. Write the correct word at the end.

- I haven't got central heating; I need a plumber to ~~repair~~ a new system. install
- 1 Our estate agent made the arrangements, i.e. buying tickets, booking hotels. _____
- 2 The estate agent sold the landing which belonged to the farm. _____
- 3 What produces does that company make? _____
- 4 My sister does quite a lot of training for the civil servant. _____
- 5 I believe he exports silver jewellery from abroad. _____
- 6 A nanny takes care for children. _____
- 7 Sales representants have to travel a lot. _____

6 Test yourself. Look at the jobs and cover the other columns. What do the people do?

53 I can describe a career

A Career structure

Two years ago, I got a **challenging** job with good **prospects** in local radio. I worked hard and, as a **reward**, I was **promoted**. I was delighted. I was quickly **transferred** to a different **department**. Then things went wrong: one colleague **got the sack**, and another **handed in his notice**. After that, ten people were **made redundant**. I didn't want to be **out of work**, so I decided to look **elsewhere**. I applied for a job in TV and was **appointed** assistant director. Amazing!

spotlight *dismiss, sack, fire*

An employer may **dismiss** an employee if their work is not good enough or if they have done something wrong. In less formal English, you can say **sack sb**, **give sb the sack**, or **fire sb**. An employee can get **the sack** INN.

He { **was sacked**
was given the sack
got the sack
was fired / was dismissed } for being rude.

Glossary

challenging difficult to do, but interesting and enjoyable. **challenge** N.

prospects (PL) chances of being successful in the future.

reward sth you get because you have done sth helpful, worked hard, etc. **reward sb** v.

promote sb (usually passive) give sb a better job at a higher level in a company. **promotion** N.

transfer sb/sth (from ... to ...) move sb/sth from one place to another.

department a section of a business, university, etc.

hand in your notice say officially that you want to leave your job. SYNS **resign, quit** INN.

make sb redundant (often passive) make sb leave their job because they are not needed any more.

out of work not working and unable to find a job. SYN unemployed.

elsewhere in or to another place.

appoint sb choose sb for a job.

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- a challenge | a reward D
- 1 out of work | unemployed _____
- 2 be promoted | be appointed _____
- 3 get the sack | sack someone _____
- 4 fire someone | dismiss someone _____

- 5 prospects | chances of success _____
- 6 hand in your notice | resign _____
- 7 be sacked | be promoted _____
- 8 transfer sb | move sb to another office _____
- 9 make someone redundant | fire someone _____

2 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- I was glad to be appointed to the job I have. (chosen for the job) _____
- 1 My job's very _____. (difficult but interesting) _____
- 2 I want to transfer to another _____. (section of the business) _____
- 3 I have good ____ in my job. (chances of success) _____
- 4 I'd really love to be _____. (given a better job in the company) _____
- 5 I'm bored at work, so I'm going to look _____. (in another place) _____
- 6 I've never been _____. (out of work) _____
- 7 I'd hate to have to ____ someone. (dismiss) _____
- 8 If I hated my job, I would definitely _____. (hand in my notice) _____

ABOUT YOU

3 ABOUT YOU Have you got a job? If so, are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false, or talk to another student who has a job.

B A job with responsibility

KATE Amy, I know you work on reception at the sports centre, but what does that **involve**?

AMY Well, I **handle** all customer bookings, and answer **enquiries** over the phone or **face-to-face**. Occasionally I also have to **deal with complaints** from **members of the public**, and if there's a problem, I'm the one who has to **solve** it.

KATE So it's not just **clerical duties**, then?

AMY Oh, no. Some weekends I'm **in charge of** the whole centre, and in an emergency it's my job to **make sure** that everyone is safe. I have a lot of **responsibility**.

Glossary

what does (your job) involve?	• = what do you have to do (in your job)?
handle sth/sb	• take suitable action in a situation. SYN deal with sth/sb .
enquiry	• a question about sth (make an enquiry).
face-to-face	• with and looking at sb.
complaint	• a statement that you are not satisfied with sth (make a complaint). complain v.
members of the public	• people in general (also the public).
solve a problem	• find an answer to a problem. SYN find a solution .
clerical	• connected with office work, especially keeping records or accounts (the person who does this is a clerk).
duties	• the tasks you do when you are at work.
in charge of sth/sb	• in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN responsible for sb/sth .
make sure	• check sth so that you can be certain about it.
responsibility	• the fact or duty of being in control of sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong.

4 One word is missing in each line. Rewrite the sentences, adding the missing word.

► does her job involve? What does her job involve?

- 1 I'd like to an enquiry about the club.
- 2 I talked to her to-face.
- 3 It's very hard to deal this situation.
- 4 Who's charge of this department?
- 5 You have to sure the door is locked.
- 6 We're not responsible the cleaning.
- 7 Do you know how to the problem?
- 8 I want to a complaint about the service.

5 Complete the texts.

A I used to have a boring office job – I was a ► **clerk** in the civil service for five years, but I couldn't stand it and left. I've now got a job in a tourist information office in Liverpool and I really like it. My (1) **d** include helping people to find accommodation, dealing with their (2) **e** about places to visit, and finding (3) **s** to their travel problems. I'm also (4) **r** for the Beatles tour: I take people to John Lennon and Paul McCartney's childhood homes. I try to make (5) **s** everything goes well.

B I work in a travel agent's, and my job (6) **i** organizing trips for people. I love meeting the (7) **p** and I really enjoy (8) **h** the money side of things. Some of my work is just routine (9) **c** work; other times, I have a lot of (10) **r**. For example, if a customer's holiday goes wrong, I have to (11) **d** with their (12) **c**.

6

Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

54 I can describe working conditions

Job questionnaire

- 1 Do you feel your job is **stressful**?
- 2 How much **time off** do you get every year?
- 3 Do you ever have to do **shift work**?
- 4 Do you often have to **work overtime**?
- 5 Do you normally receive an annual **bonus**?
- 6 Are you entitled to **sick pay**?
- 7 Do you have the right to join a **trade union**?
- 8 Do people in your kind of job ever **go on strike**?

spotlight time off

If you **have**, **get**, or **take time off**, you are not at work, school, etc. perhaps because you're ill, or on holiday.

I had a day off to go to a wedding.

He's taking a month off work.

Glossary

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| working conditions | the arrangements made at a place of work for physical comfort and safety. |
| stressful | making you worry a lot. stress N. |
| shift work | a pattern of work in which you sometimes work during the day and sometimes at night. |
| overtime | the time you spend working after your normal working hours (you can work overtime or do overtime INF). |
| bonus | an extra payment that is added to what you normally receive. |
| sick pay | money you receive when you are ill and cannot work. |
| be entitled to (do) sth | be allowed sth or to do sth because it is the law.
SYN have the right to (do) sth . |
| union OR trade union | an organization of people in the same kind of work who try to get better pay and working conditions for their members. |
| go on strike | refuse to work for a period of time as a protest for more money, better conditions, etc. |

1 Complete the words.

- I often do **sh i ft** work.
- 1 I belong to a **t _____ union**.
- 2 We went on **st _____** last year.
- 3 Do you get an annual **b _____ s?**

- 4 Our **w _____ ing c _____ itions** are good.
- 5 I often have to work **o _____ time**.
- 6 She **t _____ two weeks o _____** in summer.
- 7 Does he suffer from **st _____** in his job?

2 Write the words in the correct order, and add the final word.

- you / working / have / good / do **Do you have good working conditions?**
- 1 is / she / trade / member / a / of / a / ?
- 2 we / sick / are / to / entitled / ?
- 3 take / like / to / I'd / week / a .
- 4 you / shift / don't / why / like / ?
- 5 I / left / today; / time / on / didn't / I / do .
- 6 go / why / the / on / did / workers / ?

3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers to the questionnaire. If you haven't got a job, ask a student who has.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary words and look at the meanings. Say the words.

Review: Work and study

Unit 49

1 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

► I'm a careful driver. CAREFULLY I drive carefully.

1 You have to do what he tells you. INSTRUCTIONS

2 Don't talk to anyone. COMMUNICATE

3 The way you think and behave is important. ATTITUDE

4 It was a relief to finish the exam. RELIEVED

5 Spend ten minutes making notes. DEVOTE

6 He would never do anything dishonest in an exam. CHEAT

7 If you don't get what you want, try again. SUCCEED

8 Do we need dictionaries? ESSENTIAL

Unit 50

1 Tick (✓) the words or phrases that are correct.

► At university, students have to attend lectures read widely teach professors .

1 A tutor seminar lecture is a type of class at a university.

2 Some students live and study at home homesick away from home .

3 Undergraduates Professors Tutors are types of teacher.

4 In order to have enough money, students often pay tuition fees take out a loan try to get a scholarship .

5 In seminars, students may have a debate take notes write a thesis .

2 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

► I won't have enough money to live on, so I'll have to / out a loan. take

1 Our seminar started time at 10.00. time

2 My sister is studying away from home and she's living in a hall residence. hall

3 How much were the tuition for your summer course? tuition

4 We had to hurry but we arrived just time for the beginning of the lecture. time

5 At the moment, she's some medical research as part of her studies. doing

6 I would like to have the to study abroad, perhaps in Canada. the

7 When I was at university, our essays were all part of the continuous. continuous

8 Do you study away home? away

Unit 51

1 There is a spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

► Do you need a referrence? reference

1 Is there a job vacancie? vacancy

2 Did they give you any advise? advice

3 Did he acknowlege the application? acknowledge

4 I haven't got a valide work permit. valid

5 They asess people differently. assess

- 6 Do they require more information? _____
- 7 They reply automatically. _____
- 8 It's a long selection process. _____

2 Complete the dialogue.

- A You know that job ► vacancy . Did you (1) _____ for it?
- B Yes, and I went for an (2) _____ on Wednesday.
- A Wow. How did it go?
- B It seemed OK, but they didn't give me any (3) _____ afterwards, so it's hard to know. They said they'd (4) _____ me by the end of the week if they were going to offer me the job.
- A What about (5) _____ ?
- B They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees.
- A Oh really? And were there many other (6) _____ ?
- B Yes, over a hundred. I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based (7) _____ Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work (8) _____ .

Unit 52

1 Tick (✓) the correct words.

- A plumber A nanny An electrician often installs things.
- 1 A carpenter A travel agent A plumber gets his hands dirty.
- 2 A nanny A plumber An importer looks after people.
- 3 A civil servant A carpenter An estate agent usually works in an office.
- 4 An electrician A sales rep A mechanic often has to repair things.
- 5 A sales rep A civil servant A travel agent wants to sell you something.
- 6 A plumber An estate agent A carpenter has had a lot of technical training.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Miguel produces his own magazine. ~ Really? And how long has he worked in publishing ?
- 1 Dr Erman seems very good, but how much _____ does he have? ~ Oh, I think he's been in the medical _____ for about ten years now.
- 2 Who made all the travel _____ for your last holiday? ~ My wife did, but that's her job; she's a travel _____ .
- 3 How long has your father been a civil _____ ? ~ Thirty-five years. He's spent his whole _____ in the civil _____ .
- 4 Did the company give you much _____ after you started? ~ Yes, they sent me on several courses, and I took exams to get extra _____ .
- 5 What kind of _____ does she sell? ~ Electrical stuff mostly, but she's only been a sales _____ for six months.

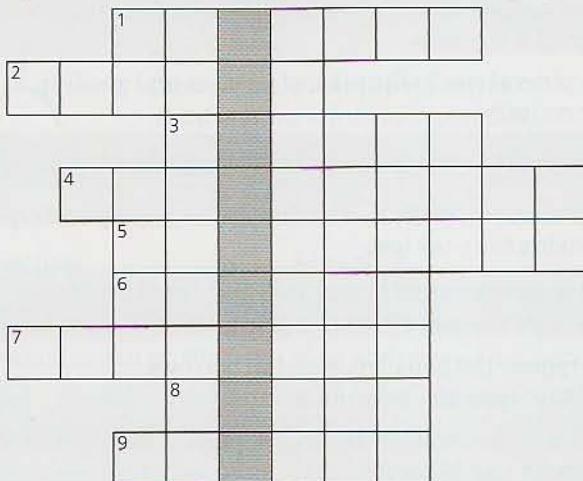
Unit 53

1 Complete the text using words from the box in the correct form.

clerk ✓ transfer charge responsibility involve challenging
resign complaints elsewhere promote work deal

When I left school, I got a job as a ► clerk with an insurance company. It mainly (1) filling in forms and typing lists of names, so it wasn't very (2) After a few months, though, I was (3) and they gave me a job where I was (4) with the public, which was much more interesting. Eventually, I was (5) to another department where I had to handle customers' (6) , which wasn't much fun. I hated it so I decided to (7) and look (8) In fact, that was rather stupid of me, because I was out of (9) for several months. Anyway, in the end I got a fantastic job working in a zoo, and I'm still here. I'm in (10) of the snakes, which is an enormous (11) but I love it!

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out another word. What is it?



- 1 choose someone for a job
- 2 something you get when you have been helpful or worked hard
- 3 if you resign, you hand in your
- 4 out of work
- 5 chances of being successful in the future
- 6 the tasks you do when you are at work
- 7 connected with office work, such as keeping records and doing accounts
- 8 find a solution to a problem
- 9 deal with something or control it

The letters in the grey squares make the word

Unit 54

1 Complete the words in the sentences.

- She's been very ill, but she doesn't get any sick pay
- 1 He always looks worried because he has such a job.
 - 2 Everyone has the r to a lunch break – it's the law.
 - 3 I don't belong to a t u any longer.
 - 4 Are you e to sick pay in your job?
 - 5 I often have to work nights, but I don't really like s work.
 - 6 Bus drivers have a basic 35-hour week, but many of them work o
 - 7 A lot of people get an annual b in addition to their salaries.
 - 8 Some of the workers went on s last year for higher pay.

55 I can talk about finance

A Financial terms

Example	Meaning
We need to raise capital .	capital the money you need to start a business (to raise capital is to find the money you need).
The company has an annual turnover of \$20 million.	turnover the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time (annual = every year). SYN sales revenue .
Operating costs have gone up this year.	operating costs the amount of money that a business needs to spend to continue as a business.
Inflation is now at 3 per cent.	inflation a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country.
We paid £1 million in tax .	tax money you have to pay to the government.
The company made a pre-tax profit of £2 million.	profit the money you make in a business after paying costs (pre-tax is before paying tax). OPP loss .
I think the company has cash flow problems .	cash flow the movement of money into and out of a business (a cash flow problem means more money is going out than coming in).
I need a bank loan . They took out a loan.	bank loan money the bank lends and sb borrows. take out obtain (you also take out insurance).
We pay a lot of interest . The interest rate is 4 per cent.	interest extra money you pay when you borrow money (the interest rate is the exact cost of borrowing).

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- | | | |
|-------------|---|----------------|
| ► annual | f | a a loan |
| 1 operating | — | b revenue |
| 2 pay | — | c rate |
| 3 raise | — | d a profit |
| 4 interest | — | e costs |
| 5 take out | — | f turnover ✓ |
| 6 sales | — | g capital |
| 7 make | — | h flow |
| 8 cash | — | i 10% interest |

spotlight **finance**

Finance can be:

1 the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business (*They need to raise more finance*). **finance** v.

OR

2 the activity of managing money in a company. **financial** ADJ. (*He's the new Director of Finance / Financial Director*.)

2 Complete the sentences.

- We can't start the business unless we can raise more capital.
- If sales continue to rise, the annual turnover could reach five million euros.
 - If we spend more money this month, we'll have a cash flow problem.
 - The current interest rate is 5 per cent.
 - It's been a good year; we've made a pre-tax profit of \$3.5 m.
 - Inflation has gone up this year because of the increase in the price of oil.
 - They needed more money so they took out another bank loan.
 - We usually make a profit, but if operating costs go up, we may make a loss this year.
 - They need the loan to start the new business.

3

 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What do the examples mean?

B Financial trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Common verbs + examples	Common nouns + examples
↑	go up, rise, increase, grow <i>Prices have risen by 10 per cent.</i>	rise, increase, growth <i>We saw some growth last year.</i>
↓	go down, fall, drop <i>Interest rates fell last month.</i>	fall, drop <i>There's been a drop in sales.</i>
→	remain unchanged/stable SYN stay the same <i>Prices have remained unchanged.</i>	stability <i>There has been stability in the markets.</i>
↓ ↗	peak <i>Sales peaked in the third quarter. (third quarter = July to September)</i>	peak <i>Sales reached a peak in 2007.</i>
↗	fluctuate <i>Sales have fluctuated all year.</i>	fluctuation <i>There has been some fluctuation in prices.</i>
Adjective	Meaning	Adverb
a slight rise in costs	very small.	Costs rose <i>slightly</i> .
a gradual rise in profits	slow and over a long period of time.	Profits have risen <i>gradually</i> .
a steady increase in the interest rate	slow but regular and continuing.	The interest rate has increased <i>steadily</i> .
a significant fall in profits	noticeable and important.	Profits fell <i>significantly</i> .
a sharp fall in sales	very large and sudden.	Sales have fallen <i>sharply</i> .

4 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- There has been a sharp fall in sales. Sales have fallen sharply.
- 1 There was significant growth in sales. Sales ...
- 2 There was a gradual rise in the price. The price ...
- 3 There was a slight fall in profits. Profits ...
- 4 There has been stability in costs. Costs have remained ...
- 5 There has been a steady rise in sales. Sales have ...

5 Complete the text. Use a different word each time.

Last year started well. In the first quarter sales ► increased significantly. The second quarter was even better: sales increased (1) They continued to (2) ... steadily in the third quarter and reached a (3) ... at 90,000. By the end of September, sales had (4) ... up (5) ... almost 50 per cent. In the last quarter there was a slight (6) ..., but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales (7) ... in the first half of the year – up one month and down the next – but in the last three months they have remained (8)

6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

- There was a → slight fall in 2003.
- 1 Sales → ... in 2004.
- 2 There was a ↗ in 2005.
- 3 Sales → ... in 2006.
- 4 In 2007, sales →
- 5 In 2008, sales ↘

56 I can talk about companies

Do Unit 55 first

A Setting up a business

Setting up a business is a **risk**. Twenty per cent of new businesses **fail** within twelve months; fifty per cent **go out of business** in three years. It may be because of poor **quality** services or **goods**, or one of these common mistakes:

- **inadequate market research**
- poor control over **suppliers** and customers
- being **over-ambitious** and **over-optimistic**
- poor management of **stock** and **assets**
- inadequate knowledge of **rivals**
- **employing** the wrong people

spotlight Prefixes over- and under-

As prefixes, **over-** usually means *too much* and **under-** means *too little*.

He overcharged us. (He made us pay too much.)
Companies often overestimate sales figures.
(Companies think that sales figures will be larger than they are.) OPP **underestimate**.

With adjectives, they may be followed by a hyphen, e.g. **over-ambitious**.

Glossary

set up a business start a business.

risk the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future. **risky** ADJ.

fail (about a business) be unable to continue. SYN **go out of business**.

quality the good or bad condition or character of sth compared with similar things.

goods (PL) things that are made to be sold.

inadequate not sufficient; not good enough. OPP **adequate**.

market research the study of what people want to buy and why.

supplier a company that provides sth for another company. **supply** v.

stock everything a company has for sale at any particular time.

asset a thing of value that a person or company owns (e.g. a factory).

rival a person or company that competes with another. SYN **competitor**.

employ sb give sb a job (an **employer** is sb who does this; an **employee** is sb who works for an employer). SYN **take sb on** INF.

1 Circle things in this list that you can own or sell.

competitor **business** employee asset market rival goods supplier stock quality

2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

- This business is risky.
- 1 When did she start the business?
- 2 Why did the business fail?
- 3 We are the main company that supplies them.
- 4 Their products aren't very good.
- 5 Do you still employ him?
- 6 When did you employ her?

This business is a risk.

When did she set up a business?

Why did they go out of business?

We are their main supplier.

Their products are of poor quality.

Are you still his employer?

When did you take him on?

3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences using words from the box.

rivals optimistic research assets estimates employs suppliers ✓

- The company doesn't have effective controls over its customers or its suppliers.

1 The company doesn't carry out adequate market research.

2 The company is poor at managing its stock and its assets.

3 The company doesn't have a very good knowledge of its rivals.

4 The company employs the wrong people.

5 The company is over-optimistic, and it over-estimates what it can achieve.

B Growth

The first years may be a **struggle**, but if a company can **survive** this difficult period, it may develop into a successful business:

- customer numbers grow and the company **gains a share** of the **market**
- turnover increases – the company **breaks even**
- the **brand** develops a **reputation**
- the company needs more capital and may sell **shares** to the public to obtain the finance
- eventually this growth may result in the company being **taken over**

spotlight market

The **market** is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods, e.g. *There is a large market for these computers*.

It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something, e.g. *the European market, the teenage market*.

The **market leader** is the company with the biggest share of a market.

Glossary

growth

- the process of increasing in size or number. **grow** v.

struggle

- a period of action to achieve sth difficult. SYN **effort**.

struggle v.

survive

- continue to exist in a difficult situation. **survival** n.

gain sth

- obtain sth. OPP **lose sth**.

share

- a part of sth that has been divided.

break even

- not make a profit or a loss.
- the name under which one or more products are sold, e.g. 'Nike'.

brand

- the opinion that people have about sth (it can be good or bad).

reputation

- (usu PL) units of equal value that a company is divided into and which are then sold to raise money (the buyers then own part of the company).

shares

- take control of another company. **takeover** n.

take over a company

- take control of another company. **takeover** n.

4 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be the same as in the sentences on the left.

- Will they continue to grow?
- 1 Will they take it over?
- 2 People say the company is very good.
- 3 They won't make a profit or a loss.
- 4 It's the biggest company in the market.
- 5 Are you worried they may not survive?
- 6 They've survived, but it's been difficult.

Will there be continued growth ?

Will there be a struggle ?

The company has a very good reputation .

They will survive .

It's the market leader .

Are you worried about their share ?

They've survived, but it's been a break even .

5 Complete the sentences.

- It's been a struggle, but I think the business will survive .
- 1 The company now has a 10 per cent share of the market.
- 2 I bought 1,000 shares in that company. They are now worth over £10,000.
- 3 People go on buying the same brand of breakfast cereal because it's familiar.
- 4 There has been considerable growth in the soft drinks market: up 25 per cent in two years.
- 5 I think the company may be taken over by the end of the year.
- 6 It's been a good year: we've gained another 5 per cent of the market.

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

57 I can describe a successful business

GECKO HEADGEAR Ltd is a designer and **manufacturer** of safety helmets for use at sea. The company was **founded** in 1993 by Jeff Sacree and it started by selling surfboards. However, surfing is a seasonal business, and Jeff realized he needed to **diversify**. Fortunately, he was able to **exploit a gap in the market**.

'As a **surfer**¹, I could see the **potential** for a light helmet that gave protection and **retained** heat.' He made one and sold a few to other surfers. He then **did** some **research** and discovered that men who worked in lifeboats might also be interested in his helmet. It would have to be **adapted** for their use, and for that he needed **investment**: he took out a bank loan and employed more staff. 'A good relationship with the bank is **crucial** if you're developing an **innovative** product. In our **case** the process took three years.'

After the **contract** to supply helmets for the lifeboats was successful, Jeff developed different types of helmet for different uses, and has always used **customer feedback** to **refine** the product.

'**Partnerships** with suppliers have also been a **key factor** in our success. We've worked closely with different manufacturers, and this has helped us to **keep ahead** of rivals.'



safety helmet



lifeboat



surfer¹

Glossary

manufacturer	• a person or company that makes things using machines. manufacture v. SYNS producer , produce v.	investment	• the activity of putting money into sth, hoping that you will make more money as a result. invest in sth v.
found sth	• start an organization (the person is the founder).	crucial	• very important.
diversify	• introduce a wider range of products.	innovative	• introducing new ideas. innovate v. innovation n.
exploit sth	• make the best possible use of sth. exploitation n.	case	• situation.
a gap in the market	• an opportunity to create a new product, which has not been produced by other companies.	contract	• a written legal agreement (a person signs a contract).
potential	• the ability to develop into sth or sth better in the future.	feedback	• information and comments from people who have used sth.
retain sth	• keep or continue to have sth. retention n.	partnership	• a relationship between two people or organizations.
do research	• do a careful study of sth to find out more information.	key factor	• very important. • one of the things that influences a decision or affects a situation.
		keep ahead (of sb)	• stay in front of sb.

spotlight Verbs of change

To **alter** sth means to change sth, but not completely.

We've **had to alter** our plans.

To **adapt** sth means to change sth so you can use it in a different situation.

We've **adapted** the product for the Asian market.

To **refine** sth means to change sth a little to make it better.

They have **refined** the products over several years.

1 Answer these questions (you may need to read the text again).

- What is Gecko Headgear? A company that manufactures safety helmets.
- 1 When was it founded? _____
 - 2 Why did Jeff need to diversify? _____
 - 3 What qualities did the helmet have to have?
 - a) it had to be light
 - b) _____
 - c) _____
 - 4 How did Jeff discover that men in lifeboats were potential users? _____
 - 5 How did he get the money for extra staff? _____
 - 6 What does he say about the relationship with a bank? _____
 - 7 What information has he used to refine the products? _____
 - 8 What was a key factor in his success? _____

2 Rearrange the letters on the left to make words. Use the definitions to help you.

- ROTACF factor one of the things that influences a situation
- 1 TOCCARNT _____ a written legal agreement
 - 2 NATERI _____ keep or continue to have something
 - 3 RUCCRIA _____ very important
 - 4 EFKABEDC _____ comments from people who use something
 - 5 VINONTEA _____ introduce new ideas
 - 6 REDYFIVIS _____ introduce a wider range of products
 - 7 PERITNSARPH _____ a relationship between two organizations
 - 8 LOPENITAT _____ the ability to develop into something

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

- We have to keep ahead of / retain our competitors.
- 1 His company has the ability to exploit / alter the market more fully.
 - 2 They are the main producers / manufacturers.
 - 3 It's only a small business now, but it has the feedback / potential to be very successful.
 - 4 If we can't use the product like that, we may have to exploit / adapt it.
 - 5 It was a key / crucial factor in the decision.
 - 6 She invested / founded the company ten years ago.
 - 7 They don't have enough money; they need more research / investment.
 - 8 We may have to alter / adapt the product.

4 Complete the sentences.

- We may have to alter a few things to get the product exactly as we want it.
- 1 They were lucky because they saw a _____ in the market.
 - 2 Some people take out a loan. In my _____ I borrowed money from my parents.
 - 3 They are one of the leading _____ of washing machines in this country.
 - 4 If we want to find out, we'll have to do more _____.
 - 5 How much money did she _____ in the company?
 - 6 Innovation helps a company to keep _____ of its competitors.
 - 7 They can't change their minds now: they've signed the _____.
 - 8 We must _____ our most important customers. We can't afford to lose them.
 - 9 Profit was not a big _____ in my decision to invest in the company.
 - 10 It's only one product and it's very limited; the company needs to _____.

5  Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

58 I can discuss marketing

A The basis of marketing

SWOT

Marketing is the activity of presenting, **advertising**, and selling a company's products. To do that, you need to understand the company's **strengths** and **weaknesses**, and be aware of possible **opportunities** and **threats**. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

Strengths, e.g. specialist **skills** in the company

Weaknesses, e.g. **limited** financial **resources**

Opportunities, e.g. increased **demand** for a product from a particular market **sector**

Threats, e.g. a **downturn** in the economy, **reducing** overall demand

spotlight skill

Skill (u) is the ability to do something well, usually needing practice. **skilful** ADJ. You often need a particular **skill** (c) for a job. **skilled** ADJ. OPP **unskilled**.

He has the right management skills.

She's a skilful negotiator.

We had a number of highly skilled workers.

Glossary

advertising the activity of telling people about a product to try to make them buy it. **advertise** v.

strength a good quality or feature. OPP **weakness**.

opportunity a situation in which it is possible to achieve sth.

threat a possible danger or problem.

limited small in number or amount. OPP **unlimited**.

resources (usu PL) the supply of sth that you need, such as money or skills.

demand (for sth) the need for sth from a particular group of people.

sector a part of an economy, society, or area of activity.

downturn a time when an economy or industry is weaker than normal. OPP **upturn**.

reduce sth make sth less or smaller. OPP **increase sth**. **reduction** N.

1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

► Limited demand B

1 A number of opportunities. _____

2 They have a lot of skilled workers. _____

3 There are a number of threats. _____

4 Unlimited financial resources. _____

5 A reduction in demand. _____

6 An upturn in the economy. _____

2 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.

► We only have a small number of products available at the moment. limited

1 There is a lot of competition in this part of the market. _____

2 There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter. _____

3 They have a number of good qualities. _____

4 There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger. _____

5 Do we have the money and skills to make this product? _____

3 Complete the sentences.

► New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.

1 If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right _____.

2 More people will know about the product if we _____ it on TV.

3 Is there still a growing _____ for mobile phones?

4 If there is more competition, we may have to _____ the price.

5 First we must analyse our strengths and _____.

B Developing a marketing strategy

Useful marketing tips

- Don't **assume** you know what your customers want
- **Target** the 20 per cent of your customers who provide 80 per cent of your profit
- Don't **ignore** the competition, and be ready to **respond** to it
- Don't try to compete on price alone: think about quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to **gather** reliable **data** to make accurate market **forecasts**
- You need to have **realistic** **objectives**
- Don't forget to **evaluate** your strategy; and if something isn't working, change it.

Glossary

strategy	• a plan you make in order to achieve sth.
tip	• a piece of advice.
assume sth	• accept or believe sth is true without proof assumption N.
target sb	• decide on the people you want to sell to (your target market).
ignore sb/sth	• pay no attention to sb/sth.
respond to sb/sth	• say or do sth as an answer to sb/sth. response N.
gather sth	• bring many things together, e.g. information or data.
data	• facts or information.
forecast	• a statement saying what will happen in the future. forecast v.
realistic	• sensible, and based on what is possible in a particular situation.
objective	• sth you are trying to achieve. SYN goal/aim .
evaluate sth	• study the facts then form an opinion of sth.

4 Cover the glossary, then match 1–5 with a–f.

- respond d a pay no attention to something
1 assume b choose somebody you want to sell to
2 evaluate c bring many things together
3 ignore d say or do something as an answer ✓
4 gather e study the facts and then form an opinion
5 target f accept or believe something without proof

5 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

- Did she know it was true? ~ No, she just assumed it.
1 Do they have a plan for this? ~ Yes, they've got a .
2 He doesn't have an aim. ~ No, he needs an .
3 Has he replied to you? ~ No, there's been no .
4 Do they have the information? ~ Yes, they've gathered all the .
5 Is it a sensible forecast? ~ Yes, I think it's quite .
6 Was it good advice? ~ Yes, it was a very useful .

6 Complete the sentences.

- We contacted them, but so far they haven't responded.
1 They got into trouble because they all their competitors.
2 Have they given you a sales for next year?
3 We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we they are.
4 The company has decided to the youth market next year.
5 We've all the information together. Now we need to evaluate it.

7 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Can you remember the meanings?

Review: Business

Unit 55

- 1 Find eleven more 'money' words or phrases. (You can go across and down.)

C	P	C	O	S	T	B	C
A	R	L	P	T	E	A	A
S	O	O	G	U	S	N	P
H	F	A	T	R	H	K	I
F	I	N	A	N	C	E	T
L	T	Y	L	O	S	S	A
O	T	A	X	V	D	I	L
W	R	E	V	E	N	U	E
I	N	T	E	R	E	S	T

- 2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has the same meaning.

► Sales went down quite a lot. Sales fell significantly.

1 The price went up a little. The price _____.

2 The price went down a lot. The price _____.

3 Last year the price stayed the same. Last year the price _____.

4 Sales went down from \$3 m to \$2 m. Sales _____ \$1 m.

5 Sales went up and down. Sales _____.

6 Last year there was a very small rise. Last year there was a _____.

Unit 56

- 1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.

► They went out of business. B

4 They have valuable assets. _____

1 They're gaining a share of the market. _____

5 There are more rivals. _____

2 They're struggling. _____

6 They're taking people on. _____

3 They're taking a lot of risks. _____

7 Their shares are going up. _____

- 2 Complete the list of company objectives using words from the box.

quality risks set up ✓ market shares growth rivals even reputation

► Set up the business by the end of the year.

1 In our first year we aim to break _____.

2 In years 2 to 5, we want to see continued _____ in our profit.

3 We don't want to take too many _____.

4 We have to watch our _____ very closely.

5 We want our products to be of the highest _____.

6 Within three years we want a 10 to 15 per cent share of the _____.

7 We want the company to develop a good _____.

8 Within five years we would like to sell _____ to the public.

Unit 57

1 Match verbs 1–8 with definitions a–i.

- refine i
- 1 retain
- 2 manufacture
- 3 innovate
- 4 invest
- 5 alter
- 6 found
- 7 exploit
- 8 diversify

- a change something but not completely
- b put money into something
- c make the best possible use of something
- d start a business/organization
- e keep or continue to have something
- f introduce a wider range of products
- g introduce new ideas
- h make things using machines
- i change something a little to make it better ✓

2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- You have to try to keep in front of others. ahead
- 1 The introduction of new ideas was crucial.
- 2 It was a very important decision.
- 3 We did a careful study to find the best product.
- 4 My partners were prepared to put money in the company.
- 5 They signed a written legal agreement.
- 6 I knew the product had the possibility to become better.
- 7 We try to get information and comments on our products.
- 8 They wanted to introduce a wider range of products.

Unit 58

1 Find eight more pairs of words in the box that have a similar meaning.

small ✓ danger advice ability plan aim reply data need threat
information response limited ✓ strategy tip objective skill demand

- small / limited / / /
 / / / /
 / / / /

2 Complete the words in each sentence.

- Developing a marketing strategy.
- 1 Analyse the company's s and w.
- 2 Analyse the o for the company and the threats.
- 3 Make sure to g reliable market d.
- 4 Don't a you know what your customers want.
- 5 Make sure you have realistic o.
- 6 Don't i your competitors.
- 7 Try to make accurate and reliable f for future sales.
- 8 Remember to e your marketing strategy to see if it is working.

59 I can express probability

Next week in the life of
pessimistic Pamela, aged 15

- Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll definitely see Max (the boy I fancy).
- Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's bound to speak to him first, and she's prettier than me, so Max is more likely to fancy her.
- Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear - I doubt if he'll even notice me.
- Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I expect he'll think I'm stupid.
- Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday - Max might go there instead.
- Friday: There's a good chance it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a disaster.
- Saturday: Woke up with a spot on my face - I'm definitely not going.



Glossary

- pessimistic** always believing bad things will happen. OPP **optimistic**.
- definitely** certainly; for sure.
- fancy sb** INF be attracted to sb.
- bound to do sth** If sb is bound to do sth, they will almost certainly do it.
- likely to do sth** If sb is likely to do sth, they will probably do it. OPP **unlikely to do sth**.
- doubt (if/that ...)** If you doubt if or that sth will happen, you think it probably won't happen.
- expect sth** think or believe sth will happen.
- might** used to say that sth is possible. SYN **may**.
- a chance** a possibility (**a good chance** is a more than 50 per cent possibility).
- disaster** INF If sth is a disaster, it is terrible.
- spot** an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin (teenagers have them).

1 Complete the definitions.

- If something is a disaster, it is terrible.
- 1 If something is bound to happen, it will certainly happen.
- 2 If something is likely to take place, it will take place.
- 3 If something might happen, you can also say that it happen.
- 4 If there's a chance that something will happen, it means it is that it will happen.
- 5 If you expect something to happen, it means you it will happen.
- 6 If you think that something is unlikely, it means it is not going to happen.
- 7 If you doubt that something will happen, it means you think it is going to happen.
- 8 If you are pessimistic, you always believe that things will happen.

2 A friend is taking an exam next week. Will she pass? Look at the percentage (%) on the right and write sentences with a similar meaning. Don't use the verb **think**.

- She'll definitely pass.
- 1 _____
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____

PASS?

- 100% yes
95% yes
75% yes
50% yes
25% yes
100% no

3 ABOUT YOU Use the vocabulary to write sentences about your life next week.

60 I can explain similarities and differences

Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost **identical** except that Sam is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are **similar except for** their colour. The **similarity between** Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears. In character though, they're not **alike**. **Compared with** Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's **completely different** from the other two, **apart from** the fact that he's **greedy** – all labradors are greedy given the opportunity. With the other two, **the main difference** is that Boss is rather quiet in **comparison with** Jake.



Boss

Sam

Jake

Glossary

identical without a single difference. **SYN** **exactly the same**.

except not including sb/sth (**except that** + clause or **except for** + noun).

similar (to sb/sth) like sb/sth but not the same. **similarity** **N** (a **similarity between** things).

alike very similar (don't use **alike** before a noun).

completely different different in every way.

apart from sb/sth **SYN** **except for** sb/sth.

greedy wanting to take more than you need (usually food).

the main difference the most important difference.

spotlight **compare** **v.** **comparison** **N**

When you **compare** people or things, you say how they are different.

*If you **compare** dogs **and/with** cats, dogs are usually more greedy.*

***Compared with/to** dogs, cats are very clean.*

***In comparison with** dogs, cats are more independent.*

1 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

► Barley is like my other dog. similar to

1 She's very tall compared with Elena.

2 I liked all of them except for the blue one.

3 The two boys aren't very similar.

4 The most important difference is colour.

5 Poland is very big in comparison with Hungary.

6 The twins are exactly the same.

2 Complete the sentences.

► If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.

1 She is very _____ to her mother; they both laugh all the time.

2 _____ with his last album, the new one's a bit boring.

3 There is a _____ between the two tables: they're both made of the same wood.

4 This chair is like the one in your bedroom, _____ that this one's a bit softer.

5 Max always tries to eat his brother's food as well as his own; he's a _____ dog.

6 Some people say my brother and I are _____, but I think we're _____ different.

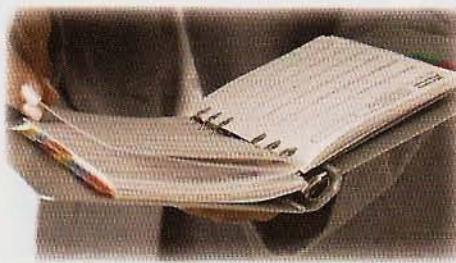
7 I didn't like the film, _____ from the ending, which was great.

8 The main _____ between the two students is that Carlo has better pronunciation.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.

61 I can make arrangements to meet

- A Mike, we need to talk about the project.
Can we **get together** next week?
B Yes, sure.
- A **Can you make it** on Monday morning, **say**?
B No, I'm not **available** then.
How about Tuesday afternoon?
- A I'd like to, but **I'm afraid**
I'm **tied up** then.
Can we make it Friday morning **instead**?
B **I'm supposed to** see Jo then,
but I think I can **postpone** that.
I'll **confirm it with you** tonight.
- A Great, well, I'll wait to hear from you.
- = meet
= Are you able to come?
= for instance / for example
= free to see you
= What about ...?
= I'm sorry, but ...
= busy
= as an alternative
= I'm meant to
= put that off
= tell you definitely / for sure



Glossary

How about ...? is ... suitable? SYN **What about ...?**
instead (of sth) in the place of sth (e.g. *We could take the train, or we could hire a car instead.*) SYN **as an alternative**.
postpone sth decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time. SYN **put sth off**.

- 1 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase with the same meaning.

- I'll confirm it later. tell you definitely
1 I'm supposed to meet him at six.
2 He's tied up tomorrow.
3 How about Friday?
4 He's not available now.
5 I'll postpone it.
6 Can you come, say, at five?
7 Can you make it tomorrow?
8 We must get together soon.
9 I'm sorry but I'm busy.

spotlight *be supposed to, be meant to*
+ verb

If you **are supposed to**, or **are meant to** do something, another person thinks you will do it because you have agreed to do it.

I'm supposed to meet David later, but I don't really want to go.

She's meant to finish that job today. ~ She's so slow; I don't think she will.

- 2 There's a mistake in each sentence. Write the correct sentence at the end.

- She supposed to be here at 3.00. She's supposed to be here at 3.00.
1 Shall we make together for a meeting?
2 I'll tell you definite tomorrow.
3 I could put the meeting out until Friday.
4 I'm afraid but I'm tied up then.
5 A Let's meet at a restaurant, saying?
B No, what about the station in place?
6 For an alternative, we could meet on Tuesday.

- 3 Test yourself. Look at the dialogue and cover the meanings. Can you remember the meaning of each word or phrase in bold?

62 I can discuss my likes and dislikes

MISCHA BARON: the food king!	Meaning	
I'm mad about food. I spend a lot of time thinking about it.	be mad about sth/sb INF like sth/sb very much. SYN be crazy about sth/sb INF.	
I adore cooking, though I'm not very keen on washing up afterwards.	adore (doing) sth INF love (doing) sth. be keen on (doing) sth INF (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth.	
I'm very fond of Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.	be fond of (doing) sth like or enjoy (doing) sth, especially over a long time.	
I don't like takeaway food at all.	not at all not in any way. (If you don't like sth at all , you dislike it very much.)	
As a child, I loathed cabbage (I hated the smell), but I've got to like it now.	loathe (doing) sth dislike (doing) sth very much (also loathe sb). get to like sth/sb start to like sth/sb.	
There are only a couple of things I can't stand : one is snails. The other thing I absolutely detest is yoghurt. I'd rather die than eat yoghurt.	can't stand (doing) sth INF strongly dislike (doing) sth. SYN can't bear (doing) sth . detest (doing) sth , hate (doing) sth (also detest sb). SYN loathe sth/sb . would rather ... than would prefer.	

spotlight Verb + -ing

Many verbs meaning 'like' or 'dislike' (= not like) can be followed by an **-ing** form.

1 Complete the table using the words and phrases in the box.

can't stand ✓ detest mad about fond of adore
loathe keen on crazy about can't bear not like at all

like very much	like	dislike very much
.....	can't stand

2 Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

- I'm not keen for ... I'm not keen on
- 1 I fond of ...
 - 2 I don't stand ...
 - 3 I loathe to cook ...
 - 4 I'm mad in ...
 - 5 I can't bearing ...
 - 6 I'm detest ...
 - 7 I adore eat ...
 - 8 I've crazy about ...
 - 9 Recently, I've got for like ...
 - 10 I'm rather eat ... than ...

ABOUT YOU

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences in Exercise 2. Write about food, drinks, cooking, things you like doing, etc. If possible, tell another student.

63 I can give my opinion

A Asking for and giving opinions

- A **Apparently**, the government wants to increase the number of young people going to university. **What do you think about** that?
- B **Personally**, I think it's a good idea. People should have the chance to go to university.
- A Maybe, but **it seems to me** we need more people with manual skills, not more academics. And why haven't we got those people? It's the government's **fault**.
- B You think the government **is to blame for** everything. But don't you **reckon** it's a good idea, **in principle**, for more young people to have a better education?
- A Yes, I think education is an incredibly important **issue**, but **the point is**, what kind of education do we want young people to have?

Glossary

apparently based on what you have heard or read.

What do you think about . . . ? is used to ask sb's opinion about a general topic (also **How do you feel about** . . . ? We usually use **think of** when asking about a person or thing, e.g. *What do you think of his new book?*)

fault responsibility for a mistake.

be to blame for sth be responsible for sth bad (e.g. *He's to blame for the accident.* = The accident **is his fault**.)

reckon (that) sth **INF** think or have an opinion about sth.

in principle in general, but perhaps not in all the details. **SYN** **in theory**.

issue a problem or subject for discussion.

the point is the most important part of what I'm saying is.

1 Write the words in the correct order.

► issue / reckon / it's / important / I / an
I reckon it's an important issue.

1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?

2 I / it's / think / good / personally / a / idea

3 agree / in / it / principle / I / with

4 choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me

5 it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was

spotlight Giving opinions

I think (that) . . . , Personally I think (that) . . . , and It seems to me . . . , are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear **In my opinion . . . FML, As far as I'm concerned . . . , and If you ask me . . .**

2 Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

► I think it'll be difficult.

EASY I don't think it'll be easy.

1 I think we should do something.

SEEMS

2 What do you think about that?

FEEL

3 I think we should help them.

OPINION

4 It's my fault.

BLAME

5 I think it'll be a problem.

RECKON

3 Complete the sentences.

► Personally, I thought the film was awful.

1 _____, the government made the mistake, so it's their _____.

2 As far as I'm _____, the most important thing is to find a new manager.

3 I think climate change is one of the most important _____ of the 21st century.

4 We both think it's important, but the _____ is, what are we going to do about it?

5 In _____, I quite like his suggestion, but I don't know if it'll work.

B For or against? 🎙

The government's **considering** a **proposal** to increase the legal age to drive a car from 17 to 21. What do you think of this idea?

FOR

- Personally, I think it's very **sensible**. Too many young people are killed on our roads.
- Yes, I'm **in favour of** it, because it would reduce the number of cars on the road.
- I would **support** it, too. I don't think 17 year-olds are **mature** enough to drive a car.

AGAINST

- I'm **not in favour of** this. I reckon more young people will just drive illegally.
- I'm **against** it, too. I **believe that** if young people are old enough to vote, then they're old enough to drive.
- I'm **opposed to** it. It'll make teenagers more **dependent on** their parents.

Glossary

consider sth think about sth carefully before making a decision.

proposal a plan that is formally suggested.

propose v.

sensible practical and intelligent. OPP **silly**.

in favour of sth in agreement with sth. OPP **against sth**.

reduce sth make sth smaller or less in quantity or size. OPP **increase sth**.

support sth agree with sth and sometimes offer help. **support** N.

mature acting in a sensible, adult way.

believe that have the opinion that.

opposed to sth believing that sth is wrong.

dependent on sb/sth needing sb/sth to help you.

4 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

► She is not in favour of it.

against

1 I think it's a practical and intelligent idea.

.....

2 They're going to think carefully about the new plan.

.....

3 We can make it less.

..... it .

4 I agree with them and think they're right.

..... them.

5 Do you have the opinion that he's innocent?

.....

6 What do you think of the plan that was formally suggested?

.....

5 Complete the dialogues.

► Are you going to help them? ~ Yes, I'm going to support the plan.

1 Is he in favour of it? ~ No, he's against it.

2 Will it increase the problem? ~ No, it'll increase it.

3 Do they like the idea? ~ No, they're against it.

4 Are you going to support her? ~ Yes, I believe that she's right.

5 Do you think it's sensible? ~ No, I think it's silly.

6 Are they against the idea? ~ No, they're in favour of it.

7 Does she really need our help? ~ Yes, she's completely dependent on us.

8 Is he old enough to look after the shop? ~ Yes, he's a very mature young man.

64 I can talk about rules

A Rules at school

The school I went to in the 1930s was very strict. We had to wear a uniform, and the headteacher insisted that we even wore it to church on Sundays. We weren't allowed to talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but of course nobody obeyed that rule. Smoking was banned everywhere. The teachers made us work very hard, and we were forced to stay after school some evenings to do four or five hours' homework. One day I laughed during a test, and the teacher made me write to all 40 students in the class and apologize for my bad behaviour. How silly! I was very disobedient, and always being punished.



1 Cross out one word to make each sentence correct.

- Will the government ban to fast food?
- 1 Did she force to you to eat it?
- 2 They made us to sit there for an hour.
- 3 I wasn't be allowed to eat anything.
- 4 Did he always obey with the rules?
- 5 She punished to me because I was late.
- 6 She insisted on that she didn't do it.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words on the right.

- She's very bad; she always disobeys the rules. OBEY
- 1 The children behave very well yesterday. BEHAVIOUR
- 2 You aren't allowed to walk on the grass. ALLOW
- 3 My dog is very disobedient; he never comes when I call him. DISOBEDY
- 4 They have banned alcohol at football matches. BAN
- 5 What was her punishment for breaking the rules? PUNISH
- 6 His behaviour was terrible yesterday. BEHAVE

3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.

When you were at school at the age of 11,

- were girls allowed to wear make-up?
- 1 were you an only child?
- 2 what happened if you didn't obey the rules?
- 3 were the rules very strict?
- 4 what did teachers force you to do that you didn't like?
- 5 did children behaviour better or worse than nowadays?

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.

B Can you choose? 🎵



I'm a bus driver. In my job ...

... wearing a uniform is **compulsory** **obligatory** FML.

I have no choice/option; I have to wear one.

= you must do it because of a rule or a law.

... smoking **is forbidden** **isn't permitted** FML when I'm working.

I'm not allowed to smoke at work.

= you mustn't do it; it's against a rule or against the law.

... working at night is **optional** **not compulsory**.

If I want to work at night, **it's my choice** **it's up to me** INF.

I have the **option of** working on Sunday twice a month.

= you can decide or choose what to do; you needn't / don't have to do it.

My boss **lets** me go home early on Fridays.

= you are allowed to go home early.

5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

► He allowed me to do it. | He permitted me to do it. S

1 It's not compulsory. | It's up to you. _____

2 She has no choice. | It's optional. _____

3 It's his choice. | It's up to him. _____

4 Is it compulsory? | Is it forbidden? _____

5 It's obligatory. | It's allowed. _____

6 It's optional. | It's not compulsory. _____

7 He lets me do it. | He allows me to do it. _____

8 It's not optional. | It's obligatory. _____

6 Complete each of the dialogues with one word.

► Do you have to wear a uniform? ~ No, it's not compulsory.

1 Can you leave the building at lunchtime? ~ Yes, they _____ you do what you want.

2 Do you have to work at the weekends? ~ Yes, I have no _____.

3 Are you _____ to use the phone for personal calls? ~ No, it's _____.

4 Can he work at home some days? ~ Yes, he can; it's _____ to him.

5 Do you have to do extra training for the job? ~ No, you don't – it's _____, but I probably will.

6 Is today's meeting optional or _____? ~ Well, it's your _____, but I think you should go.

7 There's a café at work; you're not _____ to eat your own food there.

8 I have the _____ of working in different departments if I want to move around.

7 Test yourself. Cover the left-hand column in the table and look at the explanations. Can you remember the words and phrases in bold?

65 I can discuss hopes and plans

A Making plans

- A Ramiro says you're **making plans** for your grandmother's 100th birthday in July.
- B Yes, we've still got a few things to **sort out**.
- A So you're **going to** have a big party, are you?
- B Yes, we're **expecting** about a hundred people, **actually**.
- A Wow! And where do you **intend to** have it?
- B On a river boat, and I'm **hoping to** get a jazz band too.
- A That sounds great! I hope it all **goes smoothly**.
- B Yeah, I don't want anything to **go wrong** because she's really **looking forward to** it.

Glossary

- make plans (for sth)** • prepare for sth you want to do in the future. SYN **plan sth**.
- sort sth out** • organize sth.
- be going to do sth** • plan to do sth in the future.
- expect sth** • think that sth will happen because it is probable or has been planned.
- intend to do sth / doing sth** • plan to do sth. **intention** N. OPP **have no intention of doing sth**.
- hope to do sth** • want to do sth and think that it is possible.
- go smoothly** • happen without difficulties or delays.
- go wrong** • If sth **goes wrong**, there is a problem and the plan might fail.
- look forward to (doing) sth** • feel happy about sth that is going to happen.

spotlight **actually**

Actually is often used when adding new information or being more exact. SYN **in fact**. Be careful: **actually** does **not** mean 'at the moment'.

*He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, **actually**.*

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- She's looking forward to seeing John. | She's expecting to see John. **D**
- 1 Did the wedding go smoothly? | Did the wedding go wrong? _____
- 2 He plans to go to Ireland. | He intends to go to Ireland. _____
- 3 I live in Poland at the moment. | I live in Poland, **actually**. _____
- 4 I'm hoping to get the job. | I'm going to get the job. _____
- 5 I don't intend to buy the car. | I've no intention of buying the car. _____
- 6 Have you planned anything for tonight? | Have you made any plans for tonight? _____

2 Complete the email.

We're ► **going** to take six months off work and go travelling this winter. At the moment we're (1) **making** plans and trying to decide exactly where to go. We (2) **intend** to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm (3) **hoping** to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. I'm not (4) **expecting** anything very smart, but at the same time, I've no (5) **intention** of sleeping in a tent for the whole time. At the moment we're trying to sell our car to help pay for the adventure: I just hope nothing goes (6) **wrong** with the sale. In (7) **fact** , if everything goes (8) **smoothly** , we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous; I'm really looking (9) **forward** to it.

3 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What do the words mean?

B Spoken responses

Are you going to move house?

	Responses	Meaning
✓	Definitely.	= Yes, I'm sure it will happen.
✗	Definitely not.	= No, I'm sure it won't happen.
✓	I think so.	= I think it will probably happen.
✗	I doubt it. / I don't think so.	= I think it probably won't happen.
✓	I hope so.	= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will.
✗	I hope not.	= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.
✓	I'm afraid so.	= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✗	I'm afraid not.	= I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.
✓	I assume so.	= I think it will happen, but I have no proof.
✓	I expect so. I imagine so. I suppose so. I guess so.	= I think it will happen.

4 Correct the mistakes. Write the correct sentence on the right.

- I'm assume so. I assume so.
 1 I doubt so. I doubt so.
 2 I'm not afraid. I'm not afraid.
 3 I don't think. I don't think.

- 4 I guess it. I guess it.
 5 I afraid so. I'm afraid so.
 6 I don't hope. I don't hope.
 7 Definitely no. Definitely not.

5 Complete the dialogues with the correct words or phrases.

- Is everything going smoothly with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope so.
 1 Are they going to have a party? ~ Yes, I do. It's their fortieth wedding anniversary.
 2 Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I don't think so. Mina always seems to do the cooking.
 3 Is Melissa going to get married? ~ I don't think so. I really don't like the guy she's going out with.
 4 Are you going on holiday this summer? ~ I'm not going. We can't afford it.
 5 Do you think Omar will get promoted? ~ I am. He's the best candidate and everyone likes him.
 6 Do you think they'll win? ~ I don't think so. They're playing very badly this season.
 7 Are you going to buy that CD player? ~ I don't think so. It's the best one on the market.
 8 Are you going to take the exam? ~ Yes, I am, but I'd rather wait another year.

6 Test yourself. Cover the responses and look at the meanings. What are the responses?

66 I can express dissatisfaction

A How to complain

- **Make sure** you know how you want the situation to be **resolved** after you **complain**.
- Collect as much evidence as possible, e.g. photos, **guarantees**, etc.
- Expressing **dissatisfaction in person** can be the most effective.
- Always **keep calm** when you complain. **There is no point in losing your temper.**
- **Back up your claim in writing.**
- **Consider** getting an **expert's** opinion to back up your claim.

spotlight point

Point can mean 'reason' or 'purpose', and is used in several expressions:

What's the point of doing that? (What's the reason for doing that?)

There's no point in doing that. (There's no reason to do that.)

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| ► make <u>c</u> | a in person |
| 1 a written <u>.....</u> | b calm |
| 2 lose <u>.....</u> | c a claim ✓ |
| 3 make <u>.....</u> | d guarantee |
| 4 keep <u>.....</u> | e the situation |
| 5 speak to someone <u>.....</u> | f your temper |
| 6 resolve <u>.....</u> | g sure |

2 Complete the sentences.

- Make sure you keep your receipt.
- 1 We were very with the slow service, and in the end we about it.
 - 2 You often get a two-year with a new washing machine.
 - 3 There's no in complaining without a good reason.
 - 4 It helps to have someone to you up when you make a complaint.
 - 5 If you want to make a claim, you will need to back it up in
 - 6 I tried to calm but I'm afraid I lost my
 - 7 You sometimes need to find an who really knows the subject.
 - 8 Have you seeing a lawyer to get some legal advice?

3 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. What are the meanings?

Glossary

make sure	• be certain.
resolve sth FML	• find an answer to a problem. SYN settle sth .
complain (about sth)	• say you are not satisfied with sth. make a complaint (about sth) N.
guarantee	• a written promise by a company that it will repair or replace sth that stops working within a specific period of time.
dissatisfaction	• the annoyed feeling you get when sth is not as good as you expected it to be. OPP satisfaction . dissatisfied ADJ.
in person	• speaking to sb face to face.
keep calm	• stay quiet and not get excited, worried, or angry.
lose your temper	• be unable to control your anger. OPP keep your temper .
back sth up	• support sth; say or show that sth is true.
claim	• a demand for sth, often money, that you think you have a right to, often from a company or the government. make a claim V.
in writing	• in a letter, email, etc.
consider doing sth	• think about doing sth. consideration N.
expert	• a person who has a lot of knowledge of a subject.

B Having a moan

A I'm **fed up with** the painting course this term.

B I'm not **happy with** it either. The room they've given us is **dreadful** – it's too small.

A Actually, I'm not so **bothered** about the room. It's the man who **joined** the course last month – he really **gets on my nerves**. He's always **moaning**.

B Yes, he's **spoilt** it for the rest of us, really. And next week someone else is starting.

A Oh what a **nuisance**! I don't think they should let people join the course late. I might **mention** it to the teacher.

Glossary

fed up with sth	• bored or unhappy with sth.
happy with sth	• feeling that sth is good or right.
dreadful	• very bad. SYNS terrible , atrocious , appalling .
join sth	• become a member of a group such as a class or club.
get on sb's nerves	• INF irritate sb or make sb angry.
moan	• INF keep saying what is wrong or bad about sth. moan N.
spoil sth	• change sth good into sth bad or unpleasant. SYN ruin sth .
PT, PP spoilt/spoiled	
nuisance	• a person, thing, or situation that annoys you.
mention sth	• talk about sth, usually quickly and without saying much.

spotlight bother

The verb **bother** is used in several expressions:

I'm not bothered about what I wear. INF = I don't care about what I wear.

(I'm) sorry to bother you. = I'm sorry to disturb you. (Used when sb is busy.)

Don't bother to buy the milk. = Don't trouble yourself; it's not necessary.

4 Cross out one more word in this list that does not have a negative meaning.

atrocious ► join fed up ruin moan dreadful
nuisance spoil mention appalling

5 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- What dreadful weather. ~ Yes, absolutely atrocious .
- 1 What's the matter? ~ Oh, I'm fed up with this essay.
 - 2 Oh Brian, I'm sorry to bother you. ~ That's OK. Come on in.
 - 3 We can't watch TV. It's not working. ~ Oh no! What a nuisance .
 - 4 There was too much salt on the meat. ~ Yes I know. It really spoiled it.
 - 5 Shall I close the gate? ~ No, don't mention it. Leave it open.
 - 6 I've decided to join a chess club. ~ I didn't know you played chess.
 - 7 Do you want to go out? ~ No, I'm not moaning . Let's stay here.
 - 8 Did you say anything about the course? ~ Yes, I mentioned it to the director.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is there anything you're fed up with at the moment? _____
- 2 Is there anything or anyone that gets on your nerves? _____
- 3 Do you moan about anything in particular? _____
- 4 Can you think of anything in your town that's dreadful? _____
- 5 Are you bothered about the level of your English at the moment? _____

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

67 I can understand warnings



Glossary

mind (your head, leg, etc.) used to tell sb to be careful of sth.

danger the possibility of sth happening that will injure, harm, or kill sb.

beware of sth (usually on written signs) be careful of sth.

warning a notice or statement that tells you to be careful. **warn sb (of/about sth)** v.

cross (sth) go from one side of sth to the other.

in case of sth if sth happens.

caution (used in notices) be careful.

swallow sth make food or drink go down your throat and into your stomach.

seek sth FML try to find sth or ask sb for sth.

assistance FML help or support.

premises (PL) the building and land around it belonging to a business.

1 Write the words in correct sentences.

► mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers Mind your fingers. That dish is hot.

1 assistance / any / need / do / you / ?

2 help / seek / symptoms / Caution / if / continue / medical

3 beware / bites / the / of / it / dog

4 is / when / don't / the / down / Warning / cross / barrier

5 building / the / fire / case / in / of / leave / immediately

6 police / ring / of / case / in / the / emergency

2 Complete the sentences.

► Look out! There's a car coming!

1 If someone the liquid, take them to hospital and take the bottle with you.

2 of falling rocks. In of emergency, call the police.

3 the step when you leave the building.

4 Watch ! There's a big spider.

5 The river was flooded, and a policeman us about the ahead.

6 Be when you're driving there. There are often low flying !

7 If you need any , please ring the office.

8 There are usually guard dogs on the business at night.

Review: Social English

Unit 59

- 1** Complete the sentences on the right, keeping the same meaning as in the sentences on the left.

- It's possible he'll go.
 - 1 He's sure to go.
 - 2 I don't think he'll fancy her.
 - 3 I'm almost sure it'll be a disaster.
 - 4 He might go.
 - 5 I expect it'll rain later.
 - 6 He always thinks the worst will happen.

He might go.

He'll

I he'll fancy her

It's bound _____.

There's a chance

It's _____

Unit 60

- ## 1 Complete the text.

The twins and me



My sisters, Lucy and Ellie, are twins. To look at they are absolutely **► identical**, (1) _____ for their hair: Lucy's is long, and Ellie's is shoulder-length. They adore being twins and they love people to know they are twins. When they go out, they make sure that their clothes are (2) _____ the same.

In character, though, they're not (3) Ellie is confident and optimistic (4) with Lucy, who is much more reserved and quiet. When they are at university, their behaviour is also (5) different. Ellie is friends with everyone, but Lucy doesn't spend time with anyone (6) from her sister. The (7) difference between the twins and me is the way we look, of course. I'm very dark in (8) with them: they both have beautiful blonde hair.

Unit 61

- ### 1 Complete the conversation.

- A Jun, we must get together next week. Can you (1) it on Tuesday?

B I'm (2) I'm busy on Tuesday. (3) about Wednesday?

A No, I don't think I'm (4) then. I'm supposed (5) see Chris about the computer.

B Oh dear. Wednesday's the only day next week that I'm not (6) up. Could you possibly (7) your computer meeting until the following week?

A I'm not sure; I'll have to talk to Chris. Can I (8) that with you tomorrow?

B OK, Jun, that's fine. I'll wait to hear from you.

Unit 62

1 Complete the sentences with suitable words.

Things or people that I like:

- 1 I'm very on physical exercise.
- 2 I'm of the people in my class.
- 3 I'm about dancing.
- 4 I absolutely chocolate.

ABOUT YOU

Things or people that I don't like:

- 5 I don't like shellfish at .
- 6 I can't waiting in queues.
- 7 I'm not very on cheese.
- 8 I absolutely cold weather.

2 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 1? Write your own sentences or ask another student.

Unit 63

1 Which two phrases have a similar meaning? Tick (✓) them.

- I support it | personally, I think | if you ask me
- 1 not in favour of | the issue | against
 - 2 is to blame | it seems to me | is his fault
 - 3 in my opinion | as far as I'm concerned | I'm considering
 - 4 in favour | in principle | in theory
 - 5 is opposed to | is against | is mature
 - 6 I believe | I reckon | I blame

2 Circle the correct word or phrase.

- It seems/reckons to me that we need this.
- 1 Is he in favour/against of the proposal?
 - 2 It's not your blame/fault.
 - 3 Give him a key; he's quite sensible/silly.
 - 4 What do you think about/of my new car?
 - 5 I need to consider/reckon this issue.
 - 6 Do you agree in favour/in principle?
 - 7 Do you support/opposed to the idea?

Unit 64

1 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning should stay the same.

- Smoking isn't allowed. BAN Smoking is banned.

- 1 He doesn't do what I say. DISOBEY
- 2 They make us work hard. FORCE
- 3 You can't eat here. ALLOWED
- 4 You have to wear a uniform. COMPULSORY
- 5 She allowed us to sit down. LET
- 6 The boss says we have to go. INSIST
- 7 The way he acts in class is terrible. BEHAVIOUR
- 8 He makes us suffer if we're late. PUNISH

Unit 65

1 Complete the dialogue.

- A You must be busy ► making plans for your wedding.
B Yes, I am, in (1) f , I seem to do nothing else.
A Are you (2) e a lot of guests?
B Oh, yes, (3) d – it's going to be enormous. We've both got big families.
A And is Barry (4) i to come?
B Goodness, I really (5) h not – he's the last person I want at my wedding. Anyway, I have no (6) i of inviting him.
A And how about Auntie June – is she coming?
B No, I'm (7) a not – she's not very well, (8) a . Her operation didn't go as (9) s as expected, so she won't be able to make it. She's ok, though.
A That's a relief. And what about Grandpa – is he (10) g to be there?
B Well, I (11) g so – it wouldn't be a wedding without him, would it?

Unit 66

1 Is the speaker happy or unhappy in the sentences? Write H or U.

- The rain didn't spoil my holiday. H
1 I was really fed up with her.
2 The weather's atrocious, isn't it?
3 We've resolved the problem.
4 Billy's moaning again.
5 Judi didn't lose her temper.
6 I've got a complaint about the room.
7 The noise doesn't bother me.
8 That dog's a nuisance.
9 My day's been ruined.

2 Rewrite the sentence using the correct form of the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- Don't get angry. TEMPER Don't lose your temper.
1 There's no reason to go out. POINT There's
2 You should speak to her face-to-face. PERSON You
3 I would ask someone who knows a lot about it for advice. EXPERT I
4 Have you ever thought about going to live abroad? CONSIDER Have
5 She became a member of the tennis club. JOIN She
6 Waiting in queues really irritates me. NERVES Waiting
7 I don't think the cost of the meal is important. BOTHER I
8 Did she say anything to you about the divorce? MENTION Did ?

Unit 67

1 Complete the warnings.

WARNING
Do not cross the railway line when the barrier is down.

1 **LOW DOOR.**

YOUR HEAD.

2 **Watch**
for thieves.

3 **OF DOGS!**

4 **IN** **OF THEFT,**
PHONE THIS NUMBER.

5 **If swallowed,**
seek medical
immediately.

6 **Broken glass on the path**
– please be

68 I can use link words

A Reason, result, and addition

A **link between A and B** is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all **link** one idea (A) **with** another idea (B).

Glossary

as a result because of sth that happened before.

SYN **so**.

due to sth because of sth.

what's more INF used when you are adding information in spoken English or informal written English. SYN **plus** INF (and see spotlight).

as used to say why sth happens, or why sb does sth. SYNS **since**, **because**.

consequently because of sth that happened before. SYN **therefore**. (Both words are more formal than **as a result** or **so**.)

... and everything went wrong. I forgot to set the alarm, and **as a result**, I overslept and had to get a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed **due to** the snow. **What's more**, when the train arrived, it was absolutely freezing **as** the heating wasn't working. A bit later the ticket inspector came round, and I discovered I'd bought the wrong kind of ticket, **so** I had to pay again, **plus** I had to pay a fine, which was very annoying. And when I finally got off the train, I slipped on the ice and broke my ankle. **Consequently** I spent the rest of the day, not at the meeting, but in hospital having x-rays. Not my best day.

spotlight *in addition, moreover, furthermore*

These are more formal ways of adding more information or arguments.

*The business was in trouble. **In addition**, his activities had attracted the attention of the police.*

*Teacher numbers have risen by 1.2%. **Moreover**/
Furthermore, extra money is being spent on books.*

1 Circle the correct word.

► **(As/**In addition I had no money, I couldn't pay.

- 1 It snowed heavily, and **as a result/plus**, we had to stay in for two days.
- 2 It was an old armchair, and **because/what's more**, it smelled horrible.
- 3 He had to give up his job **consequently/due to** stress.
- 4 People are richer these days and **therefore/since** they spend a lot more.
- 5 It was a long way to the station, **so/plus** I had a suitcase.
- 6 **Since/Furthermore** he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
- 7 Zoltan saw a man standing in the shadows. **Therefore/Moreover**, he was holding a knife.
- 8 The town has a good transport system. **Furthermore/As a result**, it is very cheap.

2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

reason	result	addition
As		

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- I had a very bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, plus **the room was** hot.
- 1 In winter, schools sometimes have to **due to** bad weather.
 - 2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport; **consequently**, **fly** that day.
 - 3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. **Furthermore**, the food **...**
 - 4 As I **...** much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
 - 5 He forgot his key and therefore he couldn't **...** the flat.
 - 6 Jeans are extremely practical; **what's more** **...** expensive.

B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things that are being compared. The words in bold below are used to introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in <u>one</u> sentence:	Notes
We got a ticket. { although even though } it wasn't easy. though	The clause with although , even though , and though can come at the beginning or the end, e.g. Although it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.
I went to work { despite feeling very unwell. in spite of the bad weather. despite the fact that I had flu.	Despite and syn in spite of are followed by an -ing form or a noun.
Contrasting two ideas in <u>two</u> separate sentences:	
The car was old. { Despite that. In spite of that. } I still bought it.	In despite that and in spite of that , the word <i>that</i> refers back to the fact that the car was old.
She didn't work hard. { However. Nevertheless, } she still passed All the same.	However and nevertheless are more formal; all the same is more informal.
He says he's rich. I don't believe him. { though. however.	At the end of a sentence, however is more formal than though .

spotlight *still*

Still can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

She felt ill, but she still went to work.

He left an hour early, but he still missed the train.

4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- He says nice things about you. 9
 - 1 He got the job in spite of _____
 - 2 I saw the film last night. _____
 - 3 He went out despite the fact that _____
 - 4 The soup was disgusting, _____
 - 5 We had a nice day even _____
 - 6 He felt really cold despite _____
 - 7 He went to bed very late. All the same, _____
 - 8 The bike's useful. Nevertheless, _____
- a he got to work on time in the morning.
 - b he wasn't feeling very well.
 - c although the main course was nice.
 - d though the weather wasn't very good.
 - e his lack of experience.
 - f the fact that the heating was on.
 - g However, you can't trust him. ✓
 - h I'd rather have a car.
 - i I didn't think much of it, though.

5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- We had quite a nice day there. All _____ the same, I wouldn't go back again.
- 1 I could just see the house _____ the fog.
- 2 Jun has very little money. In spite of _____, he's really generous.
- 3 You'll find it hard to get work there. _____, it's worth trying.
- 4 I wanted to see the exhibition. When I got there, it was closed, _____.
- 5 There was more snow today, _____ I think it's warmer this evening.
- 6 In _____ of leaving two hours early, we _____ missed the plane.
- 7 I didn't feel sleepy _____ though it was very late.
- 8 _____ the fact that we thought we knew the way, we got lost twice.

C Other link words

Word or phrase	Example	Meaning/usage
whereas	I enjoy tennis, whereas my father prefers rugby.	used for comparing two people, things, etc. and saying there is a difference between them.
on the one hand ... on the other (hand)	On the one hand , it's lovely here in summer, but on the other , the winter is terrible.	used for showing opposite points of view.
otherwise SYN or (else)	Put your cake on the table, otherwise the dog will eat it.	used to say that if sth doesn't happen or isn't true, sth else will happen, sometimes sth bad.
provided (that) SYN as long as	I'll go provided you come with me.	only if.
unless	I'll accept the job at the BBC unless they offer me a job at Sky.	used to say that sth will happen or be true if sth else does <i>not</i> happen or is <i>not</i> true.
in case	Take a map in case you need it.	because sth might happen.
so (that)	He got there early so that he could speak to her before the lesson.	used to talk about the purpose of an action.

spotlight purpose

A **purpose** is a reason for doing something, or a thing that someone wants to achieve.

What's the **purpose** of your trip?

The **purpose** of the meeting is to discuss the figures.

6 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- He speaks German, whereas I don't. | I don't speak German, but he does. S
- 1 If you leave it here, someone will steal it. | Don't leave it here, or someone will steal it. _____
- 2 I won't go to the party if Chica's going. | I won't go to the party unless Chica's going. _____
- 3 I took some money so that I could pay. | I took some money in case I had to pay. _____
- 4 She'll get there provided she leaves now. | She'll get there as long as she leaves now. _____
- 5 I always put sugar in, otherwise it's not sweet. | I always put sugar in unless it's sweet. _____
- 6 What was the purpose of his letter? | What was his reason for writing the letter? _____

7 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

whereas on the one hand so that otherwise in case unless ✓ as long as

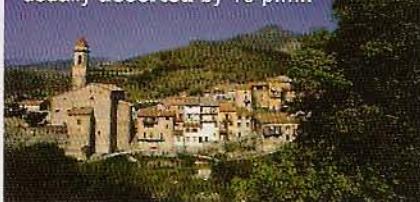
- She won't use a towel unless it's just been washed.
- 1 The children can go out _____ they don't cross the main road.
- 2 You should get there early _____ you get a good seat.
- 3 _____ flying can save time, but on the other, it's not good for the environment.
- 4 Teachers' salaries have gone up _____ nurses' salaries have fallen.
- 5 Take some chocolate with you _____ you're hungry on the journey.
- 6 Plug it in, _____ it won't work.

8 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. What are the meanings?

69 I can use a range of adjectives

A Describing places

Hidden away in this **remote** part of **rural** France is the village of La Toque. It's a **curious**, **old-fashioned** sort of place. There's only one hotel, so it's **vital** to book in advance, but don't expect anything **grand**. The accommodation and food are very **simple**, but the prices are **reasonable** and I was **impressed** with the **overall** quality. The local people are still a bit **suspicious of** tourists, but I found them very **polite**. However, you may not meet many, as the streets are usually **deserted** by 10 p.m.!



Glossary

remote	far away from where many people live.
rural	connected with the country, not the town. OPP urban .
curious	unusual or strange.
old-fashioned	typical of the past but not of the present. OPP modern .
vital	necessary and important. SYN essential .
grand	impressive and large or important.
simple	including the things you need but no extra things. SYN basic .
reasonable	If prices are reasonable , they are not too high. SYN fair . OPP unreasonable .
impressed with sth/sb	feeling that sth/sb is good or of a high standard.
overall	general; considering everything.
suspicious of sth/sb	feeling that sth/sb is dishonest and cannot be trusted.
polite	behaving in a good or correct way. OPP rude .
deserted	empty because everyone has left. OPPS busy , crowded .

1 Find seven more pairs of synonyms or opposites in the box.

simple ✓ modern curious fair polite essential busy old-fashioned
rural basic ✓ urban rude deserted vital strange reasonable

► simple / SYN basic _____ / SYN _____ / OPP _____
_____ / SYN _____ / OPP _____ / OPP _____
_____ / SYN _____ / OPP _____ / OPP _____

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- It's a rural area. | It's an urban area. **D** 4 It's essential. | It isn't vital. _____
1 No one was there. | It was deserted. _____ 5 It wasn't grand. | It was quite basic. _____
2 It's expensive. | The price is reasonable. _____ 6 I'm suspicious of him. | I don't trust him. _____
3 She's good. | I'm impressed with her. _____ 7 It was fair. | It was unreasonable. _____

3 Complete the words in the sentences.

- It gets very busy, so it's **vital** to arrive early.
1 The others found him normal, but I thought he was a **c_____** man.
2 It's a long way from town, so it's quite a **r_____** place.
3 I was **s_____** of the man when he refused to give his name.
4 I like the restaurant, and what's more, the prices are **r_____**.
5 I was very **i_____** with the hotel: it's clean, comfortable, and very friendly.
6 There were one or two things I didn't like, but the **o_____** standard was good.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary meanings and look at the words. Say the words and their synonyms and opposites.

B Describing feelings

Adjectives	Example(s)	Meaning
terrifying/terrified	It was a terrifying film. I was terrified watching that film.	very frightening. very frightened.
disappointed/disappointing	I was disappointed with my results. My results were disappointing .	feeling unhappy because sth is not as good as you hoped.
amazing/amazed	Some of the dancers were amazing .	surprising and difficult to believe, often in a positive way.
shocking/shocked	It was shocking to see so many people with nowhere to live.	upsetting and very surprising in a negative way.
alarming/alarmed	When the police arrived, it was a bit alarming .	frightening or causing worry.
disgusting/disgusted	Last night's meal was disgusting .	very unpleasant.
amusing/amused	We all thought the film was quite amusing .	funny in a gentle way.
embarrassed/embarrassing	I was embarrassed when I got his name wrong.	feeling uncomfortable because of sth silly you have done.
astonishing/astonished	It's astonishing how much she has changed in the last five years.	very surprising.
satisfying/satisfied OPP dissatisfied	Cooking for others is very satisfying .	making you feel pleased or happy.

5 Circle the correct answer.

- The beaches were really amazing/amazed.
- 1 I was shocking/shocked when I saw it.
 - 2 He was satisfying/satisfied with the course.
 - 3 The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather disappointing/disappointed.
 - 4 It was a terrifying/terrified experience.
 - 5 The smell was disgusting/disgusted.
 - 6 José felt a bit embarrassing/embarrassed.

spotlight -ed/-ing endings

We use adjectives that end with **-ed** to describe our feelings. We use adjectives that end with **-ing** to describe the person or thing that makes us have these feelings.
*We were **shocked** by his behaviour.*
*His behaviour was **shocking**.*

6 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified.
- 1 Was the film funny? ~ Yes, it was quite _____.
 - 2 You wore jeans to a smart party! ~ Yes, it was a bit _____.
 - 3 He steals money from old people. ~ I know. It's absolutely _____.
 - 4 Was he pleased with his marks? ~ No, he was _____ with them.
 - 5 Was the wine unpleasant? ~ Yes, it was absolutely _____.
 - 6 Were you surprised? ~ Yes, absolutely _____.
 - 7 Were you very frightened? ~ Yes, it was a bit _____.
 - 8 Were you happy with the work? ~ No, I wasn't _____ with it.

7 Test yourself. Look at the words in the first column and cover the examples and meanings. Can you remember the meanings?

C Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel. Here are some comments.

The rooms were **adequate** but I didn't like the **artificial** flowers.

The bed was a bit **firm** for my liking.

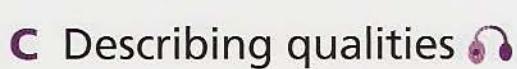
Most of the staff were **temporary** but they seemed very **efficient**.

I was **glad** we had one of their best rooms. Some looked a bit **cramped**.

I like the **contemporary** design – simple but **effective**.

I was able to take my dog. It's **rare** for a hotel to allow them.

They put champagne in our room, which was very **unexpected**.



Glossary

mixed feelings • both **positive** (+) and **negative** (–) feelings about sth.

adequate • just good enough but nothing more. OPP **inadequate**.

artificial • made by people and used instead of sth natural. OPP **real, natural**.

contemporary • of the present time. SYN **modern**. OPP **old-fashioned**.

effective • successful and giving the result you want. OPP **ineffective**.

firm • quite hard. OPP **soft**.

temporary • employed or continuing for only a limited period of time. OPP **permanent**.

efficient • working well, quickly, and without mistakes. OPP **inefficient**.

rare • not done, seen, or happening very often. OPP **common**.

glad • pleased; quite happy. SYN **pleased**.

cramped • small, and not having enough space. OPP **spacious**.

unexpected • If sth is **unexpected**, it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP **expected**.

8 Replace the underlined adjective with a word that means the opposite.

- I had positive feelings. negative
- 1 The food was adequate. _____
- 2 We had a firm mattress. _____
- 3 The service was efficient. _____
- 4 My room was cramped. _____

- 5 Is that real snow? _____
- 6 It's a rare disease. _____
- 7 It was an effective method. _____
- 8 The visit was expected. _____
- 9 It's a temporary arrangement. _____

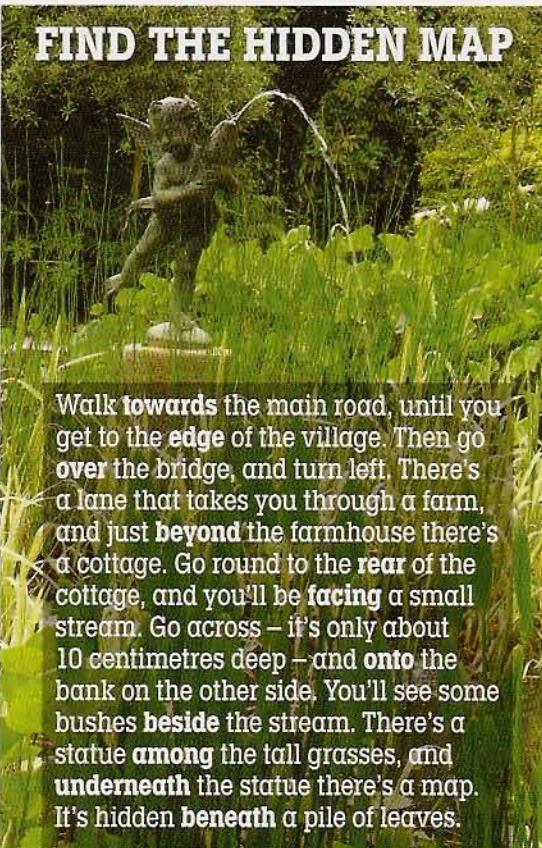
9 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

- You couldn't move round in the bathroom; it was very cramped.
- 1 I have _____ feelings about working abroad: I'd like to, but I'd miss my family.
- 2 It's a fantastic climate here. It's very _____ to have bad weather in the summer.
- 3 I'm _____ your mother is feeling better now. She was quite ill last week.
- 4 She wears very old-_____ clothes.
- 5 My sister's having a baby. It was completely _____, but we're all very happy.
- 6 This machine does the work of ten men; it's very _____.
- 7 I think his work is _____, but it could be better.
- 8 A lot of people don't like _____ art because they don't understand it.
- 9 Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite _____.
- 10 She's only a _____ member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.

10 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings? Can you remember the synonyms and opposites?

70 I can express place and time

A Place



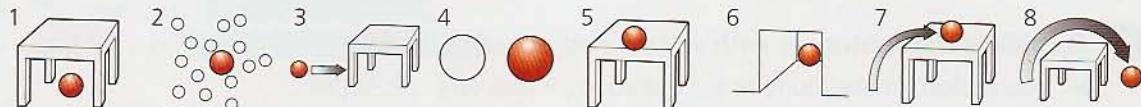
Glossary

towards in the direction of (also **toward**).
edge the place where sth, e.g. a table, a cliff, or a town, ends.
beyond past a place and further away.
rear the back of sth, especially a car or a building.
OPP **front**.
face sth look towards sth. OPP **have your back to** sth.
onto moving to or on a particular place or position.
beside next to. SYN **by**.
among surrounded by things (also **amongst**).
underneath under (when sth is hidden or covered).
beneath FML under.

spotlight over

Over has different meanings:
1 up and across to the other side of something.
Go over the bridge.
2 used to express location at a distance from the speaker.
Sit over there.
3 **all over**: in all or most parts of sth.
His clothes were all over the floor.

1 Match the pictures with the words below.



► towards 3 over 4 the rear 5 beside 6 beneath 7 onto 8 the edge 9 among

2 Complete the sentences with words from the glossary.

► The front seats are great, but there isn't much room for your legs in the rear.

1 The glass fell onto the floor and smashed.

2 I could see a few of my friends among the crowd.

3 Don't sit underneath there. Come and sit beside me.

4 I'm not surprised I couldn't find my pen; it was hidden all those books.

5 We didn't stay in one town – we went all over the place.

6 I couldn't see what was happening because I had my back to the window.

7 Don't stand so close to the edge of the road – it's dangerous.

8 There's a village in the valley, and from it, you can see the mountains in the distance.

B Time

We'd **already** played 85 minutes and we were losing. Bob suddenly shouted, 'Come on, there are still five minutes **to go** - it's not over yet.'

The children were woken **during** the night by a loud bang. It was followed by heavy rain which **lasted throughout** the night.

Guy said he'd be back at three this afternoon. **In the meantime**, I took Martha shopping. She spent all morning looking for a black dress and **eventually** found something she liked.

I used to play a bit, but **these** days I just watch football on TV. I go to a game **now and again** with my son. **Recently** we saw Arsenal play Spurs.

Glossary

already	▪ before now or before a particular point in time.
to go	▪ If there are five minutes to go , then five minutes remain before sth will happen.
over	▪ finished.
not ... yet	▪ used for talking about sth that has not happened, but will probably happen in the future.
during	▪ at some point in the period of time mentioned.
last	▪ continue for a period of time.
throughout	▪ from the beginning to the end of sth.
in the meantime	▪ during the time between two events. SYN meanwhile .
eventually	▪ after a long period of time (often after some difficulty).
these days	▪ in the present time. SYN nowadays .
now and again	▪ SYNS occasionally , from time to time .
recently	▪ not long ago. recent ADJ.

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a single word that has the same meaning.

- I saw Petra not long ago. recently
1 Do you see your uncle much these days?
2 The play continued for about two hours.
3 I go to the theatre from time to time.
4 The train wasn't due for two hours. In the meantime we went for lunch.
5 He slept from the beginning to the end of the film.
6 We waited at the hotel and after a long period of time Danny arrived.

4 Complete the dialogues.

- They want us to meet them later this afternoon. ~ Well, in the meantime , let's go to the market.
1 He's writing a book, but it's not finished . ~ Yes I know, he showed it to me . It looked very interesting.
2 Is 'Love in Amsterdam' his most film? ~ Yes, it came out the summer. I think he's working on another film now.
3 Is the match yet? ~ No, there are still ten minutes to .
4 How long does the film ? ~ About two hours, but Candy doesn't want to go. She's seen it.
5 I used to go to Rome for work, just a couple of times a year. ~ Oh, really? I lived there the 1990s – I loved it.

5 Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

71 I can use prepositions in phrases

A Preposition + word(s)

Phrase	Example	Meaning
by chance	We met in the shop by chance .	without it/sth being planned.
on board	Are all the passengers on board ?	on a plane or ship or bus.
on purpose	She broke my watch, but she didn't do it on purpose .	with a definite intention; not accidentally. SYN deliberately .
at least	It takes at least an hour to get home.	not less than, and probably more.
at first	I didn't understand him at first .	at the beginning.
in a hurry	He got up late and left in a hurry .	quickly, and usually because you haven't enough time. SYN in a rush .
in advance	Can I buy tickets in advance ?	before a particular time or event.
in charge of sth/sb	Who's in charge of the office while Matt's on holiday?	in a position of control over sth/sb. SYN responsible for sth/sb .
in general	In general , I don't work on Saturdays.	usually; in most cases. SYN generally .
in public	I don't like it when people argue with each other in public .	when other people are present. OPP in private .

- 1 Make eight more phrases using *in*, *at*, *by*, or *on*, and one of the words from the box.

general purpose advance ✓
least private public
first board chance

► in advance

spotlight *in the end* and *at the end*

In the end can mean 'finally', 'after a period of time', or 'in conclusion'.

*All the restaurants closed early, so **in the end** we went home.*

At the end can mean 'in the final part', or 'when sth finishes'.

At the end of the film, they go to live in New York.

- 2 Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

► We'll need not less than two hours to get there. at least

1 Generally, he's very helpful.

2 I think he took my dictionary deliberately.

3 All the passengers are on the plane.

4 In the final part of the story, the old woman dies.

5 Who's responsible for these noisy children?

6 I had to have breakfast quickly.

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

► He made the comment in private, but the journalist still reported it.

1 All the buses were full, so at the end we took a taxi.

2 If you want to get seats on the train, you'll have to book in advance.

3 At first I didn't like the book, but actually it got better.

4 I found the shoes I wanted at chance.

5 Like many actors, he doesn't like talking about his private life in public.

B Word(s) + preposition

Phrase	Example	Meaning
access to sth	Do you have access to the internet?	the chance to use or have sth.
make the most of sth	If he lets you use the gym, you must make the most of it.	make the best use of sth that will help you. SYN take advantage of sth .
capable of (doing) sth	She's capable of passing the exam if she works hard.	having the ability or qualities to do sth.
involved in sth	He's become very involved in local politics.	connected with sth or taking an active part in it.
approve of sb/sth	My mother doesn't approve of men who smoke.	think that sb/sth is good or suitable. OPP disapprove of sb/sth .
get rid of sth/sb	We got rid of our old sofa. They got rid of two workers.	throw sth away, or make yourself free of sth/sb you don't want.
care about sth/sb	She cares about people. He doesn't care about money.	be interested in sb/sth and think it or they are important.
take care of sb/sth	After their mother died, they took care of their father.	help and protect sb/sth. SYN look after sb/sth .
insist on (doing) sth	He insisted on paying for dinner.	say strongly that you must have or do sth, or that someone else must.
cope with sth/sb	I'll have more work next year, but I think I can cope with it.	take action successfully with a difficult situation. SYN manage .

spotlight *depend on sb/sth*

1 be able to trust someone or something. SYN **rely on sb/sth**.

*You can never **depend on** the trains in this country.*

2 be decided or influenced by someone or something.

*We may go out – it **depends on** the weather.*

4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- We can look after the children. 5 Don't get rid of that lovely dress.
- 1 She approves of my new boyfriend. 6 Can you depend on him?
- 2 Is he still involved in the company? 7 Mark is capable of doing very well.
- 3 They can't cope with all this work. 8 I don't have access to email.
- 4 He insisted on doing the cooking. 9 We must take advantage of the weather.

5 Complete the word in each sentence.

- Does she really **care** about Conrad?
- 1 How do you **cope** with three children and a full-time job?
- 2 I had to get **rid** of all my old records.
- 3 We're taking **care** of the house while they're away.
- 4 It's your only chance to speak English, so make the **most** of it.
- 5 Do you want me to **look** after the dog when you go shopping?
- 6 I want to go out, but it **depends** on the amount of homework we have to do.
- 7 He wants us to get **involved** in making arrangements for the conference.
- 8 Lucy's friends strongly **approve** of her decision to marry Jack.

72 I can use prefixes

A Negative prefixes

Adjective/OPP	Example	Meaning	Other words
insecure OPP secure	She's very insecure about her appearance.	not confident about yourself.	informal inflexible
immoral OPP moral	She stole money from my children. That's immoral .	thought to be wrong or dishonest by most people.	impossible impatient
illegible OPP legible	My doctor's writing is illegible .	very difficult or impossible to read.	illegal
irrelevant OPP relevant	I need some new shoes. The colour's irrelevant .	not important to what you are discussing or doing.	irregular irresponsible
unfair OPP fair	His office is bigger than mine. It's so unfair !	not treating each person in the same way or equally.	unpleasant unsuccessful
unacceptable OPP acceptable	The player hit the ref. That's unacceptable .	so bad that you think it should not be allowed.	uncertain unkind
disloyal OPP loyal	They were very disloyal to the family.	not supporting your friends, family, country, etc.	dishonest disorganized
non-alcoholic OPP alcoholic	Is this drink non-alcoholic ?	Juice is non-alcoholic , beer and wine are alcoholic .	non-smoking non-fiction

spotlight Prefixes

A prefix is a letter or group of letters that you put at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. The prefixes in the table above have the meaning 'not', e.g. **insecure** = not secure, **illegible** = not legible.

1 Cover the table. Write prefixes that add the meaning 'not' to the adjectives.

► <u>im</u> moral	3 <u>un</u> legal	6 <u>ir</u> formal	9 <u>ir</u> regular
1 <u>un</u> kind	4 <u>ir</u> responsible	7 <u>non</u> smoking	10 <u>un</u> honest
2 <u>non</u> alcoholic	5 <u>un</u> certain	8 <u>ir</u> secure	11 <u>ir</u> relevant

2 Complete the dialogues with one word from the table.

- Did your company find a new manager? ~ No, we were unsuccessful.
1 Is stealing from the rich the right thing to do? ~ No, it's unethical.
2 Has it got alcohol in it? ~ No, it's non-alcoholic.
3 Is your age important for this kind of work? ~ No, it's irrelevant.
4 Is she confident with other people? ~ No, she's quite insecure.
5 Men and women don't earn the same in this job, do they? ~ No, and that's unfair.
6 He didn't support his country, did he? ~ No, he was disloyal.

3 Complete the questions, then write your own answers, or ask another student.

ABOUT YOU

- 1 Do you think life is generally fair or unfair?
- 2 Is teenagers' behaviour nowadays acceptable or unacceptable?
- 3 Are your friends generally loyal or disloyal?
- 4 Is your handwriting legible or illegible?
- 5 Do you think it should be legal or illegal to drive at 17?

B Reversing an action



do your jacket **up**
SYN **fasten** your jacket
OPP **undo/unfasten**



tie your **shoelace (up)**
SYN **fasten**
OPP **untie/unfasten**



pack your suitcase
OPP **unpack**



load the van **(up)**
OPP **unload**



plug the kettle **in**
OPP **unplug**



wrap the parcel **(up)**
OPP **unwrap**



lock the cupboard
OPP **unlock**



get dressed
OPP **get undressed**

4 Circle two correct words in each sentence.

- You can wrap a) a **parcel** b) a **present** c) water.
- 1 You can unload a) a ship b) a saucepan c) a lorry.
 - 2 You can pack a) your luggage b) a suitcase c) a handbag.
 - 3 You can unplug a) a room b) a printer c) a washing machine.
 - 4 You can untie a) a dog b) a boat c) a newspaper.
 - 5 You can do up a) a pair of trousers b) a hat c) a seat belt.
 - 6 You can unlock a) a suitcase b) a car c) a bottle.

5 Complete the table using a synonym of the verb on the left, then write the opposite.

Sentence	Synonym	Opposite
► Take the bags out of the car.	Unload the car.	Load the car.
1 Take the paper off the present.		
2 Shut the suitcase with a key.		
3 Put your clothes on.		
4 Put your things in your suitcase.		
5 Fasten the buttons on your shirt.		
6 Fasten your shoelaces.		

6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words and opposites.

73 I can use suffixes

A Noun suffixes

Suffix	Verb	Noun	Verb	Noun
+ ment	judge	judgement	measure	measurement
+ ion / sion ation / ition	react interpret	reaction interpretation	extend define	extension definition
+ ance / ence	disappear	disappearance	prefer	preference
Suffix	Adjective	Noun	Adjective	Noun
+ ty / ity	cruel	cruelty	real	reality
+ ness	gentle	gentleness	kind	kindness

1 Circle the nouns.

disappear **definition** gentleness react prefer kindness
disappearance extension cruel reality define
preference interpret measure judgement extend

2 Look at the verbs and adjectives, which you did not circle, in Exercise 1. Write them below with the correct noun form.

- disappear disappearance
1
2
3
4
5
6
7

3 Complete the sentences using a word from the table above.

- She cooked for me when I was ill; I really appreciated her kindness.
- 1 Could I have the _____ of the room so that I can order the new carpet?
 - 2 I get very upset when I hear about _____ towards animals.
 - 3 He lives in a dream world and doesn't want to face the _____ of the situation.
 - 4 The police are investigating the _____ of the young man, who was last seen in 2007.
 - 5 I told the boss I was leaving; her _____ was very surprising. She laughed!
 - 6 She chose the wrong person for the job. That's just poor _____.
 - 7 I like most types of novel, but my _____ is for crime stories and murder mysteries.
 - 8 We're planning a new _____ for the old building; it'll be twice the size.

Glossary

judgement an opinion you form after thinking carefully about sth (in a court of law, the **judgement** is the judge's official decision).

measurement(s) the height, weight, etc. of sth.

reaction sth that you do or say as a result of sth that has happened.

extension a part that is added to sth to make it bigger or longer.

interpretation an understanding or explanation of the meaning of sth.

definition an exact statement of what a word or phrase means.

disappearance a situation in which sb or sth becomes impossible to see or find.

preference an interest in or liking of one thing more than another.

cruelty behaviour that deliberately causes a person or animal to suffer.

reality the way life really is.

gentleness kind and calm behaviour towards other people.

kindness behaviour that shows you care about others and want to help them.

B Adjective suffixes

Suffix Examples

-less Feel powerless in your job? Want to be powerful? Buy our POWERGUY video!

-ful The world's only **waterproof** and **shockproof** digital camera. Great for underwater photography!

-ical Cool, practical, economical clothing for tropical conditions. Go to practicalgear.com

-able *Fabulous fashionable shoes – and they're machine washable too!*

-ous Get our T-shirts with ridiculous or humorous slogans

-y Try our spicy curry or fish with a creamy sauce.

Meaning

powerless not able to influence or control people or things. OPP **powerful**.

waterproof not allowing water to enter. **shockproof** made so that it isn't easily damaged if it is hit or dropped.

practical useful and suitable.

economic using money, goods, etc. carefully and without wasting any.

tropical from or in the hottest parts of the world.

fashionable popular at the moment.

washable able to be washed.

ridiculous very silly.

humorous funny; amusing.

spicy with a strong, hot flavour.

creamy containing cream, or smooth like cream.

4 Tick (✓) the correct form. Both forms may be correct.

- ridiculous ridiculous
- 1 waterproof proofwater
- 2 careful careless
- 3 creamful creamy
- 4 humorful humorous
- 5 practicy practical
- 6 washable washless
- 7 powerful powerless

5 Are these things generally good or bad? Write G or B.

- a powerful speaker 3 harmful medicine _____ 6 an economical car _____
- 1 washable trousers _____ 4 painless medical treatment _____ 7 a powerless government _____
- 2 a shockproof watch _____ 5 tropical fruit _____

6 Complete the sentences using adjectives formed from the nouns in the box below.

spice pain practice fashion ridicule use harm humour✓ economy

- The article wasn't supposed to be humorous, but it made me laugh all the same.
- 1 Don't leave that powder there – it could be _____ to the children.
- 2 The price of the meal was _____. I just couldn't afford it.
- 3 Throw that thing away – it's absolutely _____.
- 4 A bike is much more _____ than a car in the centre of town.
- 5 These shoes may be _____, but they're incredibly uncomfortable.
- 6 My car uses less petrol than my sister's, so it's a lot more _____.
- 7 Is your toothache very _____?
- 8 I couldn't eat the meal; it was much too _____ for me.

7 Test yourself. Look at the examples and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

74 I can use verb patterns

Verb + infinitive	Example	Meaning
intend to do sth	We intend to leave early tonight.	plan or mean to do sth.
manage to do sth	I managed to get a job, but it wasn't easy.	succeed with sth that is often difficult.
tend to do sth	I tend to get up late on Sundays.	usually do sth. tendency N.
pretend to do or be sth	He pretended to be ill because he just didn't want to go to school.	act in a particular way to make people believe sth that isn't true.
refuse to do sth	Why did she refuse to help you?	say that you won't do sth that sb has asked you to do.

Other common verbs used in this way: *expect, promise, offer, decide, hope, want, mean*.

Verb + -ing form		
imagine doing sth	I can't imagine working without a computer.	think what sth will be like.
admit doing sth deny doing sth	He admitted taking the vase. She denied taking his watch.	agree that you have done sth wrong. opp deny doing sth.
recall doing sth	I don't recall meeting them.	remember sth you did in the past.
mind doing sth	Do you mind working late?	feel unhappy that you have to do sth.
regret doing sth	I regret leaving school at 16.	feel sorry that you did sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: *enjoy, avoid, keep, risk, regret, consider, suggest*.

Verb + object + infinitive		
persuade sb to do sth	He persuaded me to buy a new car.	make sb do sth by giving them a good reason to do it.
encourage sb to do sth	My sister encouraged me to have dancing lessons.	give sb help and support so that they feel confident to do sth.
warn sb not to do sth	He warned me not to go into that area.	tell sb not to do sth that might be unpleasant or dangerous.
remind sb to do sth	I had to remind her to post the letter.	help sb to remember sth that they have to do.
enable sb to do sth	His map enabled me to find it.	make it possible for sb to do sth.

Other common verbs used in this way: *want, ask, tell, beg, advise, expect, force, help, allow*.

Verb + object + preposition		
accuse sb of sth	The teacher accused the boy of cheating.	say that sb has done wrong or broken the law.
blame sb for sth	They blamed the teachers for the bad exam results.	think or say that sb is responsible for sth bad.
remind sb of sb/sth	You remind me of my dad.	cause sb to remember sb/sth.
introduce sb to sb	I introduced Miss Anderson to my boss.	tell sb another person's name when they meet for the first time.

Other common verbs used in this way: *ask sb for, forgive sb for, prevent sb from (doing sth), spend sth on*.

1 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

- They _____ to go.
a) wanted b) enjoyed c) refused d) intended
- 1 She _____ me to do it.
a) encouraged b) persuaded c) reminded d) pretended
- 2 He _____ losing the money.
a) managed b) admitted c) regretted d) denied
- 3 We _____ to go away in the summer.
a) hope b) enjoy c) tend d) intend
- 4 I don't _____ staying there.
a) recall b) mind c) tend d) regret
- 5 Did they _____ to spend all the money?
a) deny b) intend c) refuse d) mean
- 6 They _____ me not to go there.
a) reminded b) accused c) persuaded d) warned

2 Circle the correct verb.

- He said he was at the meeting, but denied/admitted causing the trouble.
- 1 The extra money I earn will warn/enable me to have a holiday this year.
- 2 The roads will be busy, so we intend/pretend to leave early.
- 3 I can't recall/imagine living in another country.
- 4 He said it was dangerous and warned/encouraged me not to go there.
- 5 The girl behind the bar accuses/reminds me of your sister.
- 6 Actually, I don't mind/admit going to the dentist.

3 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- She suggested _____ e a) making any mistakes.
- 1 She accused _____ b) me to her sister.
- 2 She persuaded _____ c) to be an actress.
- 3 She denied _____ d) me for the mistakes.
- 4 She pretended _____ e) going out. ✓
- 5 She introduced _____ f) me of lying.
- 6 She blamed _____ g) me to go.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

Is there anything:

- 1 you managed to do recently that was difficult? What? _____
- 2 you intended to do recently but didn't? What? _____
- 3 you regret doing recently? What? _____
- 4 you have refused to do recently? What? _____
- 5 someone has persuaded you to do recently? What? _____
- 6 someone has warned you not to do recently? What? _____
- 7 someone has blamed you for recently? What? _____
- 8 someone has reminded you to do recently? What? _____

5 Test yourself. Cover the third column of each table and look at the verbs and examples. Can you remember the meanings?

75 I can use phrasal verbs

A Grammar

Verb	Example	Meaning
give up [no object]	They gave up when the other team scored the second goal.	accept you cannot do sth and so stop trying.
go up	Sales went up last month.	increase in price, level, etc. OPP go down .
run out	My visa runs out next week.	come to an end.
take after sb [object goes after the verb and particle]	I take after <u>my father</u> in looks but my mother in character.	look or behave like an older member of your family.
get over sth	She's been very ill, but she's getting over it now.	recover from an illness or bad experience.
give sth away [object can go between or after the verb and particle]	I had a bike but I gave it away . He's given away <u>his old CDs</u> .	give sth to sb without wanting money for it.
make sth up	I couldn't remember the story, so I made something up .	invent sth, often sth that you pretend is true.
switch sth on	Could you switch the light on ? Could you switch on the light?	press sth to start electric power. OPP switch sth off .
put sth out	They put out the fire quickly. They put it out quickly.	make sth stop burning. SYN extinguish FML.
get on with sb [verb with 3 parts, object at the end]	Do you get on with <u>your brother</u> ?	have a good relationship with sb.
run out of sth	We've run out of bread.	finish your supply of sth.

- 1 Is the grammar in these sentences right or wrong? Write R or W.

- She gave away it. W
- 1 The numbers have gone up. _____
- 2 Did he make the story up? _____
- 3 Does he take his father after? _____
- 4 Don't put out it. _____
- 5 He'll get over it. _____
- 6 You can't switch off it. _____
- 7 She couldn't do it, so she gave up. _____

- 2 Circle the correct answer.

- Prices have gone up / given up.
- 1 He definitely takes after / gets over his dad.
- 2 It's not true: he made it up / took after it.
- 3 Do you get on with / run out of his cousin?
- 4 My passport runs out / gets over soon.
- 5 I switched on / got over the cooker.
- 6 Did he give away / take after any food?

spotlight Separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go after the verb and particle (see 1 below) or between the verb and the particle (2), but a pronoun must go in the middle (3).

- 1 *He gave away the bike.* ✓
- 2 *He gave the bike away.* ✓
- 3 *He gave it away.* ✓ (NOT *He gave away it.*)

- 3 Complete the sentences.

- He didn't want his bike, so he gave it away.
- 1 The price went _____ from €5 to €6.
- 2 You can't smoke in here – you'll have to put that cigarette _____.
- 3 Let's watch TV. Will you switch it _____?
- 4 She was disappointed not to get the job, but she'll get _____ it.
- 5 She gets _____ well _____ my parents.
- 6 Oh no! We've run _____ rice.

- 4 Test yourself. Look at the meanings and cover the examples and verbs. What are the verbs?

B In the classroom

STUDENT I can't work out number seven.

TEACHER OK. Leave it out and go on with the next one.

S I can't see the board, Miss.

T Well, put your glasses on.

T How are you **getting on**, Suki?

S Fine, thank you.

T Could you **pick up** those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

T I'll give out the dictionaries, but could you put them back when you've finished?

Glossary

work sth out find an answer to sth.

leave sth out not include sth. **SYN omit sth.**

go on (with sth) continue (with sth). **SYN carry on (with sth).**

put sth on begin wearing sth. **OPP take sth off.**

get on make progress with sth you are doing.

pick sth up take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place. **OPP put sth down.** (See *spotlight*.)

give sth out give one of sth to each person in a group. **SYN hand sth out.**

put sth back return sth to its place (see *spotlight*).

get through sth complete a task or activity.

go over sth examine and check sth carefully.

T If you **get through** the exercises today, we can **go over** them tomorrow in class.

spotlight Different meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

Pick sth or sb up also means 'go and collect sth or sb':

*I have to **pick** the car **up** this morning.*

*Can you **pick** me **up** at 5.00?*

Put sth back also means 'move sth to a later time':

*We **put** the wedding **back** until the spring.*

5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

► When are you going to collect the tickets? pick up

1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise? _____

2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term? _____

3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question. _____

4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday. _____

5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well. _____

6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 9. _____

6 Complete the sentences.

► If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out .

1 Could you give _____ the books to the students, Claude?

2 I'd like to get _____ Unit 5 by Friday, then go _____ with Unit 6 on Monday.

3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't there. I put them _____ yesterday.

4 You had a job interview yesterday, didn't you? How did you get _____ ?

5 She took her boots _____ and left them on the steps.

6 I couldn't read it until I put my glasses _____ .

7 We're very busy this week, so I had to put the meeting _____ to next Monday.

8 The suitcase was very heavy; I had to keep picking it _____ and putting it _____ .

76 I can use a range of adverbs

A Other ways of saying *very*

Some adverbs are used with particular adjectives or verbs to mean *very*, *a lot*, or *to a large degree*.

Phrase	Meaning	Other examples
I was bitterly disappointed with my results.	very disappointed.	bitterly cold
He was desperately unlucky to lose his job.	very unlucky.	desperately need
Jack was seriously injured in the crash.	badly injured.	seriously ill
He was terribly sorry he couldn't come.	very sorry.	terribly sad
It's vitally important we remember.	very important.	
It's highly unlikely that she'll be late.	very unlikely.	highly intelligent
He feels strongly that the war is wrong.	has a strong belief.	strongly oppose
Prices have risen sharply .	risen a lot.	fall sharply
This expression is widely used .	used a lot.	travel widely
I love Lucy, but she's completely mad . I completely forgot about the party. Her first book was totally different . I'm not totally convinced he's innocent.	completely is used to emphasize an adjective or verb. SYN totally . convinced 100 per cent sure.	completely bald completely ruined totally sure

1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence. Show where it should go.

- It's / important to go. vitally 4 Paula's been ill. _____
- 1 They're intelligent boys. _____ 5 Their profits have fallen. _____
- 2 It's cold outside. _____ 6 We need to earn more money. _____
- 3 That man is mad. _____ 7 It was unnecessary to do that. _____

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- They were all bitterly disappointed to lose the match.
- 1 The cost of coffee has _____ sharply since last year. It's almost double now.
- 2 The accident happened this morning, and several people were seriously _____.
- 3 I'm terribly _____. I completely _____ to bring my homework.
- 4 He _____ widely when he was in South America.
- 5 We both _____ strongly that the government should change its policy.
- 6 I'm not totally _____ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.

3 Replace *very* with a different adverb in each sentence.

- She's *very* sorry about the mistake. terribly
- 1 A good dictionary is *very* important. _____
- 2 It's *very* unlikely that he'll come. _____
- 3 We were *very* unlucky to lose the match. _____
- 4 It used to be quiet but it's *very* different now. _____
- 5 He was *very* disappointed he didn't win. _____
- 6 That story of the missing girl is *very* sad. _____

B Frequency and degree

AXEL Do you and Mac still go to concerts together **regularly**?
HARRY No, we **rarely** see each other these days. The last time was **roughly** a year ago.
AXEL Oh. Why's that?
HARRY Well, he lives in Watford now, which is miles away. That's **mainly** the reason.
AXEL But you still go to concerts, don't you?
HARRY No, **actually** I don't. I think I'm getting a bit old for rock concerts. **Generally** I just listen to music at home.
AXEL Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?
HARRY That's **partly** why I don't go. I find the noise and hysteria **rather** annoying, actually.

spotlight *rather, fairly, quite, pretty*

These words are all used to say that something is true to some extent. **Rather** and **pretty** ADV are usually stronger, **quite** and **fairly** are usually weaker.

*He's **fairly/quite** lazy.*

*The film was **pretty** good.*

With positive words, **rather** suggests a positive opinion is unexpected.

*It was a very cheap restaurant, but surprisingly the food was **rather** good.*

Glossary

regularly	• happening quite often.
rarely	• not happening often. <small>SYN seldom</small> .
roughly	• about; not exactly. <small>SYN approximately</small> .
mainly	• mostly. <small>SYN largely</small> .
actually	• really (often used when you are saying the opposite of what sb expects). <small>SYN in (actual) fact</small> .
generally	• usually; most of the time. <small>SYN on the whole</small> .
partly	• to some degree but not completely. <small>SYN to some / a certain extent (To some extent I agree, or I agree to a certain extent.)</small>

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- The town is largely industrial. | The town is mainly industrial. S
1 It's quite good. | It's fairly good. _____
2 Generally it's very quiet here. | On the whole it's very quiet here. _____
3 The house is actually very nice. | The house is very nice at the moment. _____
4 It's approximately ten kilometres. | It's roughly ten kilometres. _____
5 We go there regularly. | We rarely go there. _____
6 I partly agreed with him. | I agreed with him to some extent. _____
7 The book was rather good. | The book was pretty good. _____
8 They seldom work late. | They rarely work late. _____

5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- I go to the gym regularly. quite often
1 Generally I enjoyed the play. _____
2 The students were largely Italian. _____
3 There were roughly 30 at the party. _____
4 We go there mainly for the skiing. _____
5 It's a nice flat but it's pretty small. _____
6 I wasn't sure about Leo at first, but in fact he's very nice. _____
7 We seldom go out during the week. _____
8 Your sister is quite tall, isn't she? _____

6 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings and synonyms?

Review: Language

Unit 68

1 Circle the word or phrase that is different.

► as / since / due to

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 despite / because / in spite of | 5 though / so / therefore |
| 2 as a result / all the same / consequently | 6 in addition / moreover / however |
| 3 what's more / still / plus | 7 so / nevertheless / however |
| 4 although / despite the fact that / furthermore | 8 provided that / whereas / as long as |

2 Complete the texts with appropriate link words.

- 1 I stayed with a delightful family last summer when I was studying German in Heidelberg.
► Despite the fact that my German was quite basic to start with, they helped me with conversation, and as a (1) _____, I made a lot of progress. And what's (2) _____, by the end of my stay I felt I had made new friends. I'll go back and stay with them next summer (3) _____ that they don't have other guests.
- 2 The first day of the holiday was a disaster. There was a huge storm and we couldn't leave the hotel (4) _____ to the bad weather. In (5) _____, there was no electricity in the evening (6) _____ the storm had brought down the power lines. (7) _____, the following morning the sun came out, and things started to improve.

Unit 69

1 Complete the table.

Definition	Word	Opposite
► working well and quickly, and without mistakes	efficient	inefficient
1 not done or seen or happening very often	r_____	_____
2 just good enough, but nothing more	a_____	_____
3 <i>typical of the past, but not now</i>	o_____	_____
4 connected with the town, not the country	u_____	_____
5 full of people	c_____	_____
6 made by people and used instead of something natural	a_____	natural or _____
7 behaving in a bad and offensive way	r_____	_____
8 feeling pleasure from what you have achieved	s_____	_____
9 quite hard	f_____	_____
10 successful and giving the result you want	e_____	_____

Unit 70

1 Tick (✓) the correct words. Be careful: one or both may be correct.

► We live on *the edge* *the rear* of the village.

1 The cat was sitting *underneath* *over* the chair.

- 2 We don't play cards very often *nowadays* *these days* .
- 3 The man behind us coughed *during* *throughout* the film. It was so annoying.
- 4 We knocked on nearly every door, and *now and again* *eventually* found Lisa's house.
- 5 She jumped down from the window *beneath* *onto* the grass.
- 6 I go there *occasionally* *recently* to get some peace and quiet.
- 7 I could see her in the distance as she was running *beside* *towards* me.
- 8 We were working hard in the lesson. *Meanwhile* *In the meantime* , Darren was sitting outside, chatting to his girlfriend.

Unit 71

- 1 Complete the table with words from the box and their prepositions.

a hurry ✓ get rid involved ✓ capable insist general rely favour of
 take care purpose public approve depend a rush board

in	on	of
<u>in a hurry</u>		
<u>involved in</u>		

Unit 72

- 1 Cross out the wrong word, and write the correct word at the end.

- We ~~outloaded~~ the car and put the shopping away. unloaded
- 1 Margo's behaviour is completely non-acceptable. unacceptable
 - 2 His opinion is unrelevant; I'm going to leave anyway. irrelevant
 - 3 I think she's feeling a bit dissecure – let's look after her. insecure
 - 4 Could I have an unalcoholic drink, please? non-alcoholic
 - 5 You can disfasten your seat belt now. unfasten
 - 6 My boss is very un honest; I just don't trust him. unhonest
 - 7 I hate it when people are inpatient. impatient

Unit 73

- 1 Complete the dialogues.

- Is it OK to put this jacket in the washing machine? ~ No, it isn't washable .
- 1 He judges situations well, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he has very good .
 - 2 Do you know what this word means? ~ No, I can't give you a definition .
 - 3 How would you react if you saw a tiger? ~ I don't know what my reaction would be.
 - 4 That's a woman with a lot of power. ~ Yes, she's extremely powerful .
 - 5 This mobile comes in grey, silver, and black. ~ Any colour's OK for me; I don't have a preference .
 - 6 That's cruel to animals. ~ Yes, I hate that kind of cruelty .
 - 7 Why are you building an extension ? ~ We need a bigger kitchen.
 - 8 Will this stuff do me any harm? ~ No, it's completely harmless .

Unit 74

1 Rewrite the sentences using verbs from the box and the correct construction.

deny ✓ accuse remind tend recall persuade pretend regret admit refuse blame

- She said she didn't take the ring. She denied taking the ring.
- 1 I don't remember meeting your parents. I don't remember meeting your parents.
 - 2 He wouldn't leave. He refused to leave.
 - 3 Carrie said she stole the necklace. Carrie accused me of stealing the necklace.
 - 4 Mario said I took all the food. Mario blamed me for taking all the food.
 - 5 She's sorry she moved to London. She regretted moving to London.
 - 6 When I see Boris I think of your brother. Boris reminded me of your brother.
 - 7 He said the mistake was my fault. He blamed me for the mistake.
 - 8 I usually work in the evening. I admit that I usually work in the evening.
 - 9 Cal said he was a doctor, but he wasn't. Cal pretended to be a doctor.
 - 10 She gave me good reasons to leave. She persuaded me to leave.

Unit 75

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where from? Write it at the end.

- I'd like to try and / through this chapter today. get
- 1 My brother is very like my dad, but I take my mother. take
 - 2 If you don't need the money, why don't you give it? give
 - 3 I don't get very well with my boss. get on
 - 4 If you can't answer one of the questions, just it out. put
 - 5 He put his coat and ran out of the house. put on
 - 6 I can't work how to use this camera. work out
 - 7 Could you the TV on? I'd like to see the news. turn
 - 8 I've done my essay, but I need to go it again. do

Unit 76

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

seriously widely sharply totally roughly highly ✓ rather rarely strongly

- He's got a PhD from Harvard; he's highly intelligent – and he's charming too.
- 1 Salaries have risen widely in the last three years.
 - 2 I feel very seriously about the need to improve public transport.
 - 3 The garden is totally thirty metres long.
 - 4 I didn't enjoy the food very much, and the place was rather expensive.
 - 5 I'm always saying I'm going to do more exercise, but I rarely go to the gym.
 - 6 This kind of tool was strongly used by farmers in the nineteenth century.
 - 7 I fell off a wall and hurt myself, but I wasn't seriously injured.
 - 8 I'm strongly convinced that better communication can change the world.

77 I can recognize informal English

A Formal and informal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, and can be used in most situations. Occasionally we use formal language in spoken English, e.g. announcements (*The play will **commence** in three minutes.*), but more commonly in written English, e.g. business letters or official documents (*Keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**.*). Informal language is very common in spoken English, especially in conversation. Certain types of language are often informal:

- many phrasal verbs, e.g. **turn sb/sth down**
- uses of **get**, e.g. *Could you **get** me a pen?*
- many **idioms**, e.g. **keep an eye on sth, out of the blue**
- many examples of **vague** language, e.g. *thing(s), **stuff**, **sort of**.*

Glossary

neutral not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal).

commence FML begin.

purchase FML the act of buying sth. **purchase** v.

turn sb/sth down INF refuse an offer.

get sth INF go to a place and bring sth back. SYN **fetch sth.**

idiom an expression in which the meaning is different from the meanings of the individual words in it. **idiomatic** ADJ.

keep an eye on sth INF look after sth and make sure it is safe.

out of the blue INF suddenly and unexpectedly.

vague not clear or definite.

sort of INF not exactly, but partly (e.g. *Are you busy?* Yes, **sort of**.)

spotlight **stuff**

Stuff INF is used to refer to something without using its name. We usually use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns.

*Do you need much of this **stuff**?* (e.g. washing powder, soy sauce)

*Put that **stuff** over there.* (e.g. books, papers, files)

1 Formal, informal, or neutral? Write F, I, or N.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ► get <u>1</u> | 4 commence <u>.....</u> |
| 1 sort of <u>.....</u> | 5 vague <u>.....</u> |
| 2 purchase <u>.....</u> | 6 out of the blue <u>.....</u> |
| 3 stuff <u>.....</u> | 7 neutral <u>.....</u> |

2 Replace the underlined word with a suitable word or phrase that has the same meaning in the context.

- I made him a good offer but he refused it. turned it down
- 1 Do you want me to get your coat for you?
- 2 [announcement] The film will start in five minutes.
- 3 Where can I leave my clothes?
- 4 [business letter] There is a discount if you buy a certain quantity.
- 5 Then my parents arrived unexpectedly.
- 6 Could you look after my suitcase for a minute while I get a coffee?

3 Complete the sentences.

- My brother arrived out of the blue.
- 1 Do you understand? ~ Yes, sort
- 2 I don't know exactly where she lives, but I have a idea.
- 3 Could you get some of that organic the children like to drink?
- 4 'Keep an eye on something' is quite a common in English.
- 5 I offered him a lot of money but he still it down.
- 6 The walls are of green, but it's not a strong colour; it's quite

B Common exchanges

A Hi. How's it going?

B Not bad. And you?

A Could you give me a hand?

B Yeah sure, no problem.

A What's up with Mark?

B I haven't a clue.

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

► Yeah | Yes S

1 no problem | nothing much

2 cheers | goodbye

3 recently | lately

4 late | lately

5 I don't know | I haven't a clue

6 How's it going? | How are things?

7 What've you been up to? | What's up?

5 Put these words and expressions in more informal English.

► Hello. Hi

1 Yes.

2 Wait a moment.

3 What's the matter?

4 I don't know.

5 How are you?

6 What've you been doing?

7 Thank you.

6 Complete the dialogues.

► What's up? ~ Nothing. Why?

1 See you soon. ~ Yeah. Take .

2 Hi. How's it ? ~ Fine, thanks. And you?

3 Could you me a hand? ~ Sure. No .

4 We have to go. Hurry . ~ OK. Just on a minute.

5 What've you been up ? ~ Nothing much.

A What've you been up to lately?

B Nothing much.

A Take care. See you soon.

B Yeah. Cheers.

A Hang on. I'll be with you in a minute.

B OK, but hurry up.

Glossary

Hi

▪ INF hello.

How's it going?

▪ INF = How are you? SYN **How are things?**

give sb a hand

▪ help sb. SYN **lend sb a hand**.

yeah

▪ INF yes.

no problem

▪ INF used to say that you are happy to do sth.

What's up

▪ INF = What's the matter (with sb)?

I haven't a clue

▪ INF = I don't know.

What've you been up to?

▪ INF = What've you been doing?

lately

▪ recently.

nothing much

▪ INF nothing of importance.

take care

▪ INF used when saying goodbye.

hang on

▪ INF wait a moment. SYN **hold on**.

hurry up

▪ INF move or do sth quickly.

spotlight **cheers**

We use **cheers** to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink. It is also used in informal situations to mean either 'thank you' or 'goodbye'.

7 Test yourself. Look at the glossary words and cover the meanings. What are the meanings?

C An everyday conversation

A Do you **fancy** a drink?

B No, I'd better be **off** in a minute.

A Really? I thought you had **loads** of time.

B No, I've got to get to Mark's to **pick** up a tent!.

A **What** for?

B It's for a **mate** of mine. He wants to take his **kids** camping this weekend.

A At this time of the year? **You're** joking!

B I'm not. He **reckons** the weather's going to be fine.

A That's **nonsense**. The forecast is awful.

B Oh well. If it's a **disaster**, they'll just have to come back home.



Glossary

fancy sth • INF want sth. SYN **feel like (doing) sth.**

I'd better be off • INF I have to leave now.

loads (of sth) • INF a lot of sth. SYN **masses (of sth)** INF.

pick sth/sb up • go and collect sth/sb.

What for? • INF Why are you doing sth? or What do you need sth for?

mate • INF a friend.

kid • INF a child.

reckon • INF think.

nonsense • ideas or statements that you think are stupid or not true.
SYN **rubbish** INF.

disaster • INF a complete failure.

spotlight joke

A **joke** is something said or done to make you laugh, especially a funny short story.

We use the expression **you're joking** or **you must be joking** to express surprise, when we don't believe what someone is saying.

8 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | |
|------------|---|-------------|
| ► disaster | e | a child |
| 1 mate | | b want |
| 2 loads | | c a lot |
| 3 rubbish | | d think |
| 4 fancy | | e failure ✓ |
| 5 kid | | f nonsense |
| 6 reckon | | g friend |

9 Complete the dialogues with a single word.

- Do you fancy going out tonight? ~ Yes. Where shall we go?
- 1 Sam's going to get a snake. ~ What! You must be ...
- 2 What was the party like? ~ Terrible. An absolute
- 3 Are you going camping? ~ Yes, but I've got to buy a new
- 4 He said he had ... of money. ~ Don't believe him. He talks
- 5 I'd ... be off now. ~ Why? What time's your train?
- 6 I'm going to Sweden tomorrow. ~ Really? What ...?
- 7 Where's Leyla? ~ She's ... up the kids from school.
- 8 Do you feel ... going out? ~ Yes, good idea.

10

Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

78 I can write a formal letter

Notes

If you are writing to a **stranger** or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.

If you know the person, use *Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr*, etc. and their surname.

If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.

For an informal letter to a good friend or family member, use the first name.

Note: *Love (from)* is not normally used by a man writing to another man.

Beginnings

Dear Sir

Dear Madam

Dear Sir or Madam

Dear Mr Wu
Dear Miss Gilberto

Dear Rosa
Dear Conrad

Dear Min Ho
Hi, Pavel

Endings

Yours faithfully
your name

Yours sincerely

(With) best wishes
Kind regards

Love (from)
All the best / Take care

Glossary

stranger	▪ a person that you do not know.
enclose sth	▪ put sth in an envelope or packet with sth else.
deposit	▪ a sum of money which is your first payment for sth (you will pay the rest later). (You pay a deposit on or for sth.)
commence	▪ FML begin.
I would be grateful if you could ...	▪ used when you request sth. SYN I would appreciate it if you could ...
in particular	▪ SYNS especially, particularly.
whether	▪ if.
nearby	▪ not far away. SYN close by .
don't hesitate to do sth	▪ don't feel worried about doing sth.
look forward to sth	▪ think with pleasure about sth that is going to happen.
hearing from you	▪ receiving your letter.

spotlight further, further to

Further ADJ has several meanings:

- 1) comparative of *far*: *The station is further than the bank.*
- 2) (only before a noun) more: *Have you any further questions?*

Further to ... FML is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject:

Further to my letter of 5 July, I am happy to ...

45 Muswell Rd
London NW4
15 April 2008

Sunshine Holiday Cottages

Fore St
Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Further to our telephone conversation of last Friday, I enclose a cheque for £50 as a deposit for the rental of Rainbow Cottage for one week, commencing 21 August. I would be grateful if you could send me further information about the property, in particular, whether there is parking nearby.

We are planning to bring our dog. If this is a problem, please don't hesitate to contact me.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely
Louise Robertson

Louise Robertson

1

Cover the letter and answer these questions.

- Is Louise Robertson going to rent a cottage? Yes, she is.
- 1 Is this the first time she has contacted Mr Ellison? _____
 - 2 Why is she sending him £50? _____
 - 3 Will she be leaving or arriving on 21 August? _____
 - 4 Are there any other things she needs to know? If so, what? _____
 - 5 Whose address did she write on the right-hand side? _____
 - 6 Whose address did she write on the left-hand side? _____
 - 7 Did she write the date? If so, where? _____
 - 8 Which beginning did she use? _____
 - 9 Which ending did she use? _____
 - 10 Could she end it 'Take care, Louise'? Why/Why not? _____

2

Tick (✓) the sentences that are correct and add a cross (✗) to the sentences that are wrong.

- If you're writing to a family member, you can end it with 'Love' and your signature. ✓
- 1 If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with 'Kind regards'. _____
 - 2 If you begin your letter 'Dear Sir', you can end it with 'With best wishes'. _____
 - 3 If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, you begin 'Dear Sir or Madam'. _____
 - 4 If you write 'All the best' at the end, you could also write 'Take care'. _____
 - 5 If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should end 'Yours faithfully'. _____
 - 6 'Yours faithfully' is a common ending when you are writing to a stranger. _____

3 Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.

- Could you send me / details of the accommodation? further
- 1 I look forward / hearing / you. _____
 - 2 If there's a problem, please / hesitate / ring me. _____
 - 3 I / a photocopy / my identity card with the application form. _____
 - 4 I would be / if you / phone me about the meeting. _____
 - 5 Further / your letter / 7 April, I wish to confirm my booking. _____
 - 6 I would / it if / could help me. _____
 - 7 Please let me know / particular / there is a beach nearby. _____
 - 8 I enclose a cheque for €30 as a / for the rental of the room. _____

4

Complete the letter.

40 Lincoln Rise, Churchfield, Yorkshire
14 January 2008

Hot Property Rentals
Barton St
Weatherfield

► Dear Mrs Stephens
(1) _____ to your letter of 12 January,
I (2) _____ a cheque for £500 as a (3)
_____ on Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings.
As we agreed, my rental contract will (4)
_____ on 1 February and run for one
year. I would be (5) _____ if you could

send me a receipt for the amount enclosed.
I would also (6) _____ it if you could let
me know (7) _____ I will be able to park
in the basement of the building. If not, will I be
able to find parking (8) _____?

If you need any (9) _____ information
from me, please don't (10) _____ to call
me.

Yours (11) _____,
Jurek Gorzy

5

Test yourself. Look at the glossary meanings and cover the words. What are the words?

79 I can understand abbreviations and short forms

A Numbers and measurements

metric weight 1 g / gm (gram) = 1000 mg (milligrams) 1000 g = 1 kg (kilo/kilogram) 1000 kg = 1 t (tonne)	metric length 1 cm (centimetre) = 10 mm (millimetres) 100 cm = 1 m (metre) 1000 m = 1 km (kilometre)
metric capacity 1 cl (centilitre) = 10 ml (millilitres) 100 cl = 1 l (litre)	money UK £1 (pound) = 100 p (pence) (a sum of money); penny <small>PL. pennies</small> (coins) USA \$1 (dollar) = 100 c/ct (cents)
speed metric: 80 kph (kilometres per hour) = non-metric: 50 mph (miles per hour)	

1 Write the correct abbreviation or symbol for each word.

► litre l

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| 1 metre | 5 tonne | 9 centimetre | 13 gram |
| 2 pence | 6 miles per hour | 10 milligram | 14 millimetre |
| 3 kilometre | 7 centilitre | 11 cents | 15 pound |
| 4 millilitre | 8 kilogram | 12 kilometres per hour | 16 dollar |

2 Complete the sentences with an appropriate measurement or amount of money.

► For sale: 20 l petrol cans at reduced prices.

1 In Italy you can do a maximum speed of 130 km/h on the motorway, or 81 km/h.

2 You need a piece of card 20 cm thick.

3 To make pasta for one, cook about 70–80 g of spaghetti.

4 The cheapest thing you can buy in the café is a coffee for 85 p.

B Shortened forms

The shortened forms in the table are used commonly in spoken English.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
ad, advert	advertisement	paper	newspaper
pub	public house <small>FML</small> a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends.	deli	delicatessen a shop or part of a supermarket that sells special or unusual foreign food.
flu	influenza <small>FML</small>	TV, telly <small>INF</small>	television
gym	gymnasium	board	blackboard; notice board.
lab <small>INF</small>	laboratory a place used for scientific research, testing, etc.	vet	veterinary surgeon, a doctor for animals.
pop (music)	popular music	bike motorbike	bicycle or motorbicycle motorbicycle
fridge	refrigerator	plane	aeroplane

3 Write the short form of these words.

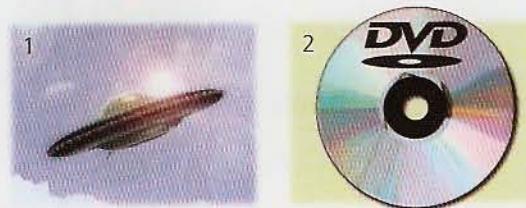
► television	TV, telly	4 bicycle	8 newspaper
1	veterinary surgeon	5 gymnasium	9 public house
2	popular music	6 aeroplane	10 delicatessen
3	refrigerator	7 blackboard	11 laboratory

4 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

- Have you taken the cat to the vet yet? ~ Yes, I'm waiting for test results from the lab.
- 1 Could you buy some cheese from the deli? ~ I got some earlier – it's in the fridge.
- 2 Are you still looking for a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some jobs in the paper.
- 3 Do you fancy a drink at the pub tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the TV.
- 4 How are you? ~ I feel awful; I think I've got flu.

C Abbreviations

The abbreviations marked * are pronounced like words, e.g. **AIDS** is pronounced 'aids'. Other abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. **BBC** is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It **stands for** British Broadcasting Corporation.



NATO*	North Atlantic Treaty Organization	UFO¹	unidentified flying object
AIDS*	acquired immune deficiency syndrome (often called 'SIDA' in other languages)	PIN[*]	personal identification number (you use this with a credit card, for instance)
UEFA*	Union of European Football Association	VAT	value added tax (a tax added to goods and services)
ATM	automatic teller machine (a cash machine)	ISP	internet service provider, e.g. AOL
EU	the European Union	DVD²	digital versatile disc
UN	the United Nations	IT	information technology
CV	curriculum vitae (a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job)	ID card	identity card (a card with your name and photo which is proof of who you are)

5 Complete the abbreviations.

- NATO is a European and North American organization.
- 1 If you use an ATM, you'll need your PIN.
- 2 If you apply for a job, send in a CV.
- 3 I showed my IT card to the police.
- 4 You have to pay VAT on those goods.
- 5 Who won the UEFA Cup last year?
- 6 He's good with computers: he's in IT.
- 7 Millions are suffering from AIDS in Africa.
- 8 We watched a DVD about UFOs last night.
- 9 There are over 25 countries in the EU.
- 10 The UN is an international organization.
- 11 An ISP provides access to the internet and email.

6 Test yourself. Cover the full forms and meanings in the tables in sections B and C, and look at the short forms and abbreviations. What are the full forms?

80 I can understand American English

US English	British English		US English	British English
candy	sweets		elevator	lift
cellphone	mobile (phone)		faucet	tap
closet	cupboard		French fries	chips
cookies	biscuits		truck	lorry
			billfold	
			wallet	

US English	British English	Meaning
apartment	flat	a set of rooms that is used as a home (apartment is sometimes used in British English for a smart holiday flat).
attorney	lawyer or barrister	a lawyer, especially one who represents people in court (barrister in British English).
datebook	diary	a book in which you write what you have to do in the future.
drugstore	chemist	a shop that sells medicines and other goods.
garbage/trash	rubbish	waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away.
garbage/trash can	dustbin	a container outside your home, in which you put the waste.
gasoline/gas	petrol	fuel used in a car (e.g. <i>We stopped for more gas on the way.</i>).
high school	secondary school	a school for children aged 14 to 18 (a British secondary school is for children aged 11 to 16 or 18).
mall	shopping mall / shopping centre	shops, cinemas, etc. in a large covered area.
movie theater	cinema	a place where you see a movie (film in British English).
purse	handbag	a bag for money, keys, etc., used especially by women (in British English, a purse is mainly used for carrying coins).
railroad	railway	a system of trains and the tracks on which they run.
round trip	return (ticket)	a journey to a place and back.
sidewalk	pavement	the part of the road where people walk.
store	shop	a shop (large or small).
subway	underground	an underground railway system.
vacation	holiday	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure.

1 Combine words from the box to form five more American English words.

free ✓ side cell date drug rail
phone way ✓ walk store road book

- freeway 3 _____
1 _____ 4 _____
2 _____ 5 _____

spotlight *highway, freeway, expressway*

The American English words **highway**, **freeway**, and **expressway** all refer to **main roads** (British English) used for travelling long distances. A **motorway** (British English) is sometimes called an **interstate (highway)** in American English.

2 Complete the missing letters.

- m o v i e 3 c s t 6 g s l e
1 g b g 4 c d y 7 tr p t t n
2 s b y 5 a t n y 8 b ll d

3 Complete the American English words.

- What age do you start high school in America?
1 Put that stuff in the trash _____.
2 We went to the movie _____ last night.
3 You can buy these things at the drug _____.
4 Do you want French _____ with your steak?
5 I go on Tuesday and come back on Thursday, so I'll need a round _____.
6 We drove over 200 miles on the interstate _____.

4 Replace the British English words with American English words.

- When does the shop open? store
1 Where are you going for your holiday? _____
2 It's upstairs, so we'll need to take the lift. _____
3 Where shall I put this rubbish? _____
4 She keeps the note in her handbag. _____
5 I put the appointment in my diary. _____
6 Do we have any more sweets? _____
7 He drives a big lorry. _____
8 Would you like another biscuit? _____
9 Could you turn on the tap? _____
10 We can't use the pavement here. _____

5 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you use the subway? _____
- 2 How often do you use the railroad? _____
- 3 How often do you go to a movie theater? _____
- 4 What was the last movie you saw? _____
- 5 How often do you eat French fries? _____
- 6 Where did you go for your last vacation? _____
- 7 When was the last time you went to a mall? _____
- 8 When did you leave high school? _____

6  Test yourself. Cover the US and British English words and look at the pictures and meanings. Can you remember the words?

Review: Styles of English

Unit 77

1 Change the underlined words to make them informal.

- T Hello, Suki. Hi _____
S Hey, Tomas! How (1) are you? _____
T Oh, not bad. What've you been (2) doing lately? _____
S Oh, nothing (3) important.
T Listen, Suki, what's (4) the matter with Jodie? _____
S Well, she went for that job at NDC, but they (5) rejected her.
T (6) I don't believe you! _____
S No, it's true. She (7) thinks someone doesn't like her there. _____
T That's (8) nonsense. Everyone likes Jodie. _____
S I know. Anyway, there are (9) lots of other jobs around. _____
T (10) Yes, you're right. _____
S Sorry, Tomas, (11) I have to leave now.
T OK, see you later. (12) Bye! _____

2 Cross out the answer which is not correct.

- | | | | |
|---|---------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ► These are idiomatic: | a) <i>out of the blue</i> | b) <i>I haven't a clue</i> | c) <i>neutral</i> |
| 1 These verbs are formal: | a) <i>commence</i> | b) <i>fancy</i> | c) <i>purchase</i> |
| 2 These mean 'go and bring something back': | a) <i>get</i> | b) <i>fetch</i> | c) <i>reckon</i> |
| 3 These can mean 'goodbye': | a) <i>hang on</i> | b) <i>cheers</i> | c) <i>take care</i> |
| 4 These mean 'wait': | a) <i>hang on</i> | b) <i>hold on</i> | c) <i>hurry up</i> |
| 5 These are used to express surprise: | a) <i>Tell me a joke</i> | b) <i>You're joking</i> | c) <i>You must be joking</i> |
| 6 These are examples of vague language: | a) <i>stuff</i> | b) <i>keep an eye on someone</i> | c) <i>sort of</i> |

Unit 78

1 Circle the correct word.

- Dear Hi Mr Bruzzone
- 1 Dear Mr/Sir or Mrs/Madam
 - 2 Kind regard/regards
 - 3 Your/Yours faithfully
 - 4 I'd like further/further to details.
 - 5 I close/enclose a self-addressed envelope.
 - 6 I'm not sure whether/weather it will be sunny.
 - 7 I need some information, particular/in particular the size of the garage.
 - 8 I look forward to hear/hearing from you.
 - 9 Please hesitate/don't hesitate to contact me.
 - 10 All the best/All best, Jamila

1 Complete the letter.

Hot Property Rentals, Barton St, Weatherfield

25 March 2008

► Dear Mr Buerk

(1) _____ to your letter of 23 March, I am writing to confirm that I have received your cheque for £90 as a
(2) _____ on Sunnybank Villa, Southstoke, for two weeks (3) _____ 1 July.

You asked for (4) _____ details about the cottage; it has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a kitchen, a sitting room, and a small garden. You have parking (5) _____, about 30 m from the front door.

I would be (6) _____ if you could let me know a few days before your visit (7) _____ you will be using all four bedrooms so that I can let the cleaner know. I would also (8) _____ it if you could send me the balance of £345 at least four weeks before your arrival.

Please don't (9) _____ to contact me if you have any (10) _____ questions. I look (11) _____ to seeing you at Sunnybank Villa in July.

Yours (12) _____,

Judy Kelveton

Judy Kelveton

Unit 79

1 What do these abbreviations stand for?

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| ► EU = European Union | 4 VAT = value |
| 1 ID = | 5 CV = curriculum |
| 2 UN = United | 6 ISP = internet |
| 3 PIN = personal | 7 IT = |

2 Can you shorten these words? If 'Yes', what is the short form?

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| ► delicatessen Yes (deli) | 3 veterinary surgeon | 7 laboratory |
| ► supermarket No | 4 washing machine | 8 receptionist |
| 1 refrigerator | 5 advertisement | 9 gymnasium |
| 2 wardrobe | 6 influenza | 10 scientific |

Unit 80

1 Complete the table with nine more pairs of British and American English words from the box.

sweets	✓	sidewalk
garbage		drugstore
biscuit		candy ✓
lift		diary
truck		rubbish
pavement		cookie
chemist		gasoline
elevator		datebook
lorry		closet
petrol		faucet
tap		wardrobe

British English	American English
sweets	candy

Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun
avoid	avoidance
approve	approval
breathe	breathing
celebrate	celebration
communicate	communication
consider	consideration
contain	container
criticize	criticism
decorate	decoration
disapprove	disapproval
divide	division
evaluate	evaluation
exhibit	exhibition
govern	government/governor
interrupt	interruption
investigate	investigation
involve	involvement
kill	killing
propose	proposal
recognize	recognition
refer	reference
remove	removal
require	requirement
shoot	shot
trade	trade, trading



Test yourself

2 Adjectives and verbs

Adjective	Verb
amusing/amused	amuse
amazing/amazed	amaze
complicated	complicate
concerned	concern
cracked	crack
delighted	delight
depressed/ depressing	depress
devoted	devote
frightening/ frightened	frighten
irritating/irritated	irritate
repeated	repeat

3 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun
accidental	accident
allied	ally
anxious	anxiety
artistic	artist
basic	basis
determined	determination
disgusting	disgust
electrical	electrician/electricity
mysterious	mystery
national	nation
proud	pride
regional	region
sexual	sex
suspicious	suspicion
sympathetic	sympathy
thick	thickness
traditional	tradition
valuable	value
wealthy	wealth
willing	willingness

4 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective
contrast	contrast	contrasting
embarrassment	embarrass	embarrassing
entertainment	entertain	entertaining
disappointment	disappoint	disappointed
imagination	imagine	imaginary
infection	infect	infectious/infected
impression	impress	impressive
preparation	prepare	prepared
relation	relate	related
sailing, sailor	sail	sailing
separation	separate	separate
swelling	swell	swollen
variation	vary	varied